

Official Guide to SOUTH AFRICA 2021/22



government
communications

Department:
Government Communication and Information System
REPUBLIC OF SOUTH AFRICA





Official Guide to **SOUTH AFRICA** 2021/22

CONTENTS AND FOREWORD



THE NATIONAL ANTHEM

Nkosi sikelel' i Afrika
 (God bless Africa)
 Maluphakanyisw' uphondo lwayo,
 (Raise high her glory)
 Yizwa imithandazo yethu,
 (Hear our prayers)
 Nkosi sikelela, thina lusapho lwayo.
 (God bless us, we her children)

Morena boloka setjhaba sa heso,
 (God protect our nation)
 O fedise dintwa le matshwenyeho,
 (End all wars and tribulations)
 O se boloke, O se boloke setjhaba sa heso,
 (Protect us, protect our nation)
 Setjhaba sa South Afrika – South Afrika.
 (Our nation South Africa – South Africa)

Uit die blou van onse hemel,
 (Ringing out from our blue heavens)
 Uit die diepte van ons see,
 (From the depth of our seas)
 Oor ons ewige gebergetes,
 (Over our everlasting mountains)
 Waar die kranse antwoord gee.
 (Where the echoing crags resound)

Sounds the call to come together,
 And united we shall stand,
 Let us live and strive for freedom,
 In South Africa our land.

Official Guide to South Africa 2021/22

Nineteenth (19th) edition

Compiled, edited and published by:
Government Communications (GCIS)
Private Bag X745, Pretoria, 0001
Telephone: 012 473 0000
Website: www.gcis.gov.za

ISBN: 978-0-621-50084-4

Editor: Elias Tibane

Picture coordinator: Busisiwe Malungwane

Images supplied by: GCIS Photography Unit

Design and layout: Trevor Baloyi

Compiled, edited and published by the GCIS.

The editor has taken all reasonable care to ensure correctness of facts and statistics. However, any person requiring confirmation of any data in the *Official Guide to South Africa* or more detailed and specific information, should contact the relevant government institution.

Unless otherwise specified, information contained in this *Official Guide to South Africa* was the latest available as at October 2022.

For all enquiries, please contact the Editor, Mr Elias Tibane, on 012 473 0069 or elias@gcis.gov.za.

CONTENTS

- Foreword by President Cyril Ramaphosa
- South Africa at a Glance
- History
- People of South Africa
- Government
- The Presidency
- Agriculture, Land Reform and Rural Development
- Communications
- Economy and Finance
- Education
- Forestry, Fisheries and the Environment
- Health
- Human Settlements
- International Relations
- Justice and Correctional Services
- Mineral Resources and Energy
- Police, Defence and Intelligence
- Provinces
- Science and Innovation
- Social Development
- Sports, Arts and Culture
- Tourism
- Transport
- Water and Sanitation



FOREWORD

The 2021/22 edition of the *Official Guide to South Africa* coincides with a time of renewed hope and restoration in our country, as we gradually recover from the impact of the Coronavirus Disease (COVID-19) pandemic that has dealt a harsh blow to our already ailing economy.

Although government had moved swiftly to deal with the pandemic by safeguarding lives and livelihoods, limited economic activity during the national lockdown resulted in job losses and increased poverty.

COVID-19 has hampered our efforts to tackle the triple challenge of poverty, inequality and unemployment through higher rates of economic growth, the creation of more jobs and the provision of better services to the people of South Africa.

As part of our economic recovery process, the Economic Reconstruction and Recovery Plan primarily focuses on growing the economy, promoting foreign investment and creating much-needed jobs.

Infrastructure development is one of the ways identified as crucial to the growth of the economy and creation of jobs. Substantial funds have been allocated for catalytic infrastructure projects over the next few years. This will, among others, support the upgrading of roads, bridges, water and sewer, transport, schools, hospitals and clinics.

In addition to fighting the pandemic, government has also been waging an intensive and sustained war against the ‘second pandemic’, gender-based violence and femicide (GBVF), which is destroying the fabric of our society. We have since unveiled legislation that deals harshly with perpetrators of GBVF – the Criminal and Related Matters Amendment Act, 2021 (Act 12 of 2021), Criminal Law (Sexual Offences and Related Matters) Amendment Act, 2021 (Act 13 of 2021) and Domestic Violence Amendment Act, 2021 (Act 14 of 2021).

Our fight against the scourge of corruption, which undermines the gains of our democracy, is gaining momentum. Government is doing all in its power to ensure that perpetrators of corruption and related malfeasance are held accountable and face the full might of the law. This intervention will ensure that South Africans have confidence in public institutions and promote a capable state.

Through ongoing support, government has enabled small businesses to recover from the effects of the COVID-19 pandemic. The Employment Tax Incentive encourages employers to hire more young and less experienced work seekers. Other important interventions include the Presidential Employment Stimulus, which aims to create jobs and strengthen livelihoods, and the Social Relief of Distress (SRD) Grant, which provides temporary assistance to unemployed persons. The SRD Grant has been extended until the end of March 2023.

To create a conducive environment and encourage businesses to operate in South Africa, government has created a dedicated red tape team in The Presidency. The team will identify priority reforms for the year ahead, including mechanisms to ensure government departments pay suppliers within the required 30 days. It will also support current initiatives to simplify processes relating to property registration, cross-border trade and construction permits.

South Africa remains committed to developing the African economy through the African Continental Free Trade Area, which promotes investment and tourism within the continent, accelerates industrialisation, and drives green growth and low-carbon development.

To address migration issues orderly, government has formulated the National Labour Migration Policy that will provide a framework and legal basis to regulate the extent to which employers can hire foreign nationals while also protecting the rights of migrants.

The chapters of the *Official Guide to South Africa* provide more information on these and other government programmes, plans and projects.



His Excellency Cyril M. Ramaphosa
President of the Republic of South Africa
October 2022



Official Guide to **SOUTH AFRICA**
2021/22

SOUTH AFRICA AT A GLANCE



Land surface area

1 220 813 km²

Key economic sectors

Mining, transport, energy, manufacturing, tourism and agriculture.

Population

Total: 60,60 million

Male: 29,62 million (48,9%)

Female: 30,98 million (51,1%)

Official languages

English, isiZulu, isiXhosa, isiNdebele, Afrikaans, Siswati, Sepedi, Sesotho, Setswana, Tshivenda and Xitsonga.

Currency

Rand (ZAR) – 100 cents equal one rand.

Time

GMT +2 hours.

Government

Constitutional multiparty democracy, with three spheres – local, provincial and national government.

Capitals

Pretoria (administrative); Cape Town (legislative); Bloemfontein (judicial). The Constitutional Court is located in Johannesburg.

Provinces

Eastern Cape, Free State, Gauteng, KwaZulu-Natal, Limpopo, Mpumalanga, Northern Cape, North West and Western Cape.

Transportation

Excellent roads, rail and air facilities (both domestic and international). Public transport in major cities include the Gautrain between Johannesburg and Pretoria, and the Bus Rapid Transport System in major cities.

Telecommunications

World-class infrastructure. Internet and Wi-Fi access is widely available. The four major mobile (cellular) networks are Vodacom, MTN, Cell C and Telkom Mobile.

Health

Top-quality public and private healthcare is available throughout the country. Malaria precautions are necessary in some areas.

Source: Statistics South Africa's Mid-year population estimates of 2022. For more information, visit www.southafrica.info and www.gov.za.



FREEDOM CHARTER

PREAMBLE: SOUTH AFRICA BELONGS TO ALL WHO LIVE IN IT, BLACK AND WHITE AND NO GOVERNMENT CAN JUSTLY CLAIM AUTHORITY UNLESS IT IS BASED ON THE WILL OF THE PEOPLE.

1. THE PEOPLE SHALL GOVERN!
2. ALL NATIONAL GROUPS SHALL HAVE EQUAL RIGHTS!
3. THE PEOPLE SHALL SHARE IN THE COUNTRY'S WEALTH!
4. THE LAND SHALL BE SHARED AMONG THOSE WHO WORK IT!
5. ALL SHALL BE EQUAL BEFORE THE LAW!
6. ALL SHALL ENJOY EQUAL HUMAN RIGHTS!
7. THERE SHALL BE WORK AND SECURITY!
8. THE DOORS OF LEARNING AND CULTURE SHALL BE OPENED!
9. THERE SHALL BE SECURITY AND CONFIDENCE FOR ALL AND FRIENDS OF ALL!
10. THERE SHALL BE...

THE STEVE BIKO
MEMORIAL GARDEN

Official Guide to **SOUTH AFRICA** 2021/22

HISTORY

Modern humans have lived at the southern tip of Africa for more than 100 000 years and their ancestors for some 3,3 million years. Some 2 000 years ago, the Khoekhoen (the Hottentots of early European terminology) were pastoralists who had settled mostly along the coast, while the San (the Bushmen) were hunter-gatherers spread across the region.

At this time, Bantu-speaking agropastoralists began arriving in southern Africa, spreading from the eastern lowlands to the Highveld. At several archaeological sites there is evidence of sophisticated political and material cultures.

European contact

The first European settlement in southern Africa was established by the Dutch East India Company in Table Bay (Cape Town) in 1652. Created to supply passing ships with fresh produce, the colony grew rapidly as Dutch farmers settled to grow crops. Shortly after the establishment of the colony, slaves were imported from East Africa, Madagascar and the East Indies.

The first British Settlers, known as the 1820 Settlers, arrived in Algoa Bay (now Nelson Mandela Bay) on board 21 ships, the first being the Chapman. They numbered about 4 500 and included artisans, tradesmen, religious leaders, merchants, teachers, bookbinders, blacksmiths, discharged sailors and soldiers, professional men and farmers.

Conflict

From the 1770s, colonists came into contact and inevitable conflict with Bantu-speaking chiefdoms some 800 km east of Cape Town. A century of intermittent warfare ensued during which the colonists gained ascendancy over the isiXhosa-speaking chiefdoms. In 1795, the British occupied the Cape as a strategic base against the French, controlling the sea route to the East.

In the 1820s, the celebrated Zulu leader, Shaka, established sway over a vast area of south-east Africa. As splinter Zulu groups conquered and absorbed communities in their path, the region experienced a fundamental disruption. Substantial states, such as Moshoeshoe's Lesotho and other Sotho-Tswana chiefdoms were established. This temporary disruption of life on the Highveld served to facilitate the expansion northwards of the original Dutch settlers' descendants, the Boer Voortrekkers, from the 1830s.

Occupation

In 1806, Britain reoccupied the Cape. As the colony prospered, the political rights of the various races were guaranteed, with slavery being abolished in 1838. Throughout the 1800s, the boundaries of European influence spread eastwards.

From the port of Durban, Natal settlers pushed northwards, further and further into the land of the Zulu. From the mid-1800s, the Voortrekkers coalesced in two

land-locked white-ruled republics, the South African Republic (Transvaal) and the Orange Free State.

The mineral revolution

South Africa's diamond mining industry dates back to 1867, when diamonds were discovered near Kimberley in what is today known as the Northern Cape.

The Kimberley diamond fields, and later discoveries in Gauteng, the Free State, and along the Atlantic coast, emerged as major sources of gem-quality diamonds, securing South Africa's position as the world's leading producer in the mid-twentieth century.

Gold

The discovery of the Witwatersrand goldfields in 1886 was a turning point in South Africa's history. The demand for franchise rights for English-speaking immigrants working on the new goldfields was the pretext Britain used to go to war with the Transvaal and Orange Free State in 1899.

The Anglo-Boer/South African War was the bloodiest, longest and most expensive war Britain engaged in between 1815 and 1915. It cost more than 200 million pounds and Britain lost more than 22 000 men. The Boers lost over 34 000 people and more than 15 000 black South Africans were killed.

Union and opposition

In 1910, the Union of South Africa was created out of the Cape, Natal, Transvaal and Free State. It was to be essentially a white union. Black opposition was inevitable, and the African National Congress (ANC) was founded in 1912 to protest the exclusion of black people from power. In 1921, the South African Communist Party was established at a time of heightened militancy. More discriminatory legislation was enacted. Meanwhile, Afrikaner nationalism, fuelled by job losses arising from a worldwide recession, was on the march.

The rise of apartheid

In 1948, the pro-Afrikaner National Party (NP) came to power with the ideology of apartheid, an even more rigorous and authoritarian approach than the previous segregationist policies. While white South Africa was cementing its power, black opposition politics were evolving. In 1943, a younger, more determined political grouping came to the fore with the launch of the ANC Youth League, a development, which was to foster the leadership of people such as Nelson Rolihlahla Mandela, Oliver Tambo and Walter Sisulu.

From the port of Durban, Natal settlers pushed northwards, further and further into the land of the Zulu. From the mid-1800s, the Voortrekkers coalesced in two land-locked white-ruled republics, the South African Republic (Transvaal) and the Orange Free State.

The mineral revolution

South Africa's diamond mining industry dates back to 1867, when diamonds were discovered near Kimberley in what is today known as the Northern Cape.

The Kimberley diamond fields, and later discoveries in Gauteng, the Free State, and along the Atlantic coast, emerged as major sources of gem-quality diamonds, securing South Africa's position as the world's leading producer in the mid-twentieth century.

Gold

The discovery of the Witwatersrand goldfields in 1886 was a turning point in South Africa's history. The demand for franchise rights for English-speaking immigrants working on the new goldfields was the pretext Britain used to go to war with the Transvaal and Orange Free State in 1899.

The Anglo-Boer/South African War was the bloodiest, longest and most expensive war Britain engaged in between 1815 and 1915. It cost more than 200 million pounds and Britain lost more than 22 000 men. The Boers lost over 34 000 people and more than 15 000 black South Africans were killed.

Union and opposition

In 1910, the Union of South Africa was created out of the Cape, Natal, Transvaal and Free State. It was to be essentially a white union. Black opposition was inevitable, and the African National Congress (ANC) was founded in 1912 to protest the exclusion of black people from power. In 1921, the South African Communist Party was established at a time of heightened militancy. More discriminatory legislation was enacted. Meanwhile, Afrikaner nationalism, fuelled by job losses arising from a worldwide recession, was on the march.

Reform

Shaken by the scale of protest and opposition, the government embarked on a series of limited reforms in the early 1980s. In 1983, the Constitution was reformed to allow the coloured and Indian minorities limited participation in separate and subordinate houses of Parliament. In 1986, the pass laws were scrapped. The international community strengthened its support for the anti-apartheid cause.

Mass resistance increasingly challenged the apartheid State, which resorted to intensified repression accompanied by eventual recognition that apartheid could not be sustained.

Apartheid's last days

Afrikaner élite openly started to pronounce in favour of a more inclusive society, with a number of businesspeople, students and academic leaders meeting publicly and privately with the ANC in exile.

Petty apartheid laws and symbols were openly challenged and eventually removed. Together with a sliding economy, increasing internal dissent and international pressure, these developments inevitably led to historic changes and the fall of apartheid.

Democratic government

South Africa held its first democratic election in April 1994 under an interim Constitution. The ANC emerged with a 62% majority. South Africa was divided into nine new provinces to replace the four existing provinces and 10 black homelands. In terms of the interim Constitution, the NP and Inkatha Freedom Party (IFP) participated in a government of national unity under President Mandela, South Africa's first democratically elected president.

The second democratic election, in 1999, saw the ANC increasing its majority to a point just short of two-thirds of the total vote. In the April 2004 election, the ANC won the national vote with 69,68% and the celebration of 10 Years of Freedom attended by heads of state and government delegations from across the world.

In 2008, Mr Kgalema Motlanthe became President following the recalling of President Thabo Mbeki. On 22 April 2009, South Africa held national and provincial elections with about 76% of registered voters casting their votes. Mr Jacob Zuma was inaugurated as President of South Africa on 9 May 2009. The following year, a significant milestone for South Africa was the hosting of the 2010 FIFA World Cup™.

Municipal elections were held on 18 May 2011, electing new councils for all municipalities in the country. October 2011 saw Statistics South Africa conducting a comprehensive national census. The census, which analysed the country's demographics, population distribution and access to services, average household size, income, migration, and mortality, was the third national population and housing count in post-apartheid South Africa. The exercise saw 156 000 field staff employed to count more than 14,6 million households.

South Africa has continued to build on its international profile. On 1 January 2011, the country started its second term as a non-permanent member of the United Nations (UN) Security Council between 2011 and 2012, serving alongside the five permanent members, China, France, the Russian Federation, the United Kingdom and the United States of America, as well as elected members Bosnia and Herzegovina, Brazil, Colombia, Gabon, Germany, India, Lebanon, Nigeria and Portugal.

In 2011, as part of government's commitment to secure a better quality of life for all, the National Planning Commission in The Presidency finalised the draft National Development Plan (NDP): Vision for 2030. The plan is a step towards charting a new path for South Africa in dealing with the triple challenge of poverty, unemployment and inequality. On 8 January 2012, Africa's oldest liberation movement, the ANC, celebrated 100 years of existence. This was a

historic achievement, not only for the movement, but also for South Africa and the continent.

In May 2012, the Square Array Kilometre (SKA) Organisation announced that the SKA Project would be shared between South Africa and Australia, with a majority share coming to South Africa. The full dish array and the dense aperture array will be built in Africa. In November 2012, South Africa was elected by the members of the UN General Assembly to the UN's 47 member Economic and Social Council. In December 2012, President Zuma was re-elected as the president of the ANC during the ruling party's congress in Mangaung, Free State with Cyril Ramaphosa elected as the party's deputy president.

In July 2013, Ms Phumzile Mlambo-Ngcuka was appointed executive director of the UN Women Entity for Gender Equality and Empowerment of Women, and Ms Geraldine Fraser-Moleketi, was appointed director in the UN Development Programme's Bureau for Development Policy.

On 5 December 2013, South Africa's first democratically elected President and anti-apartheid icon Mandela died at the age of 95. Mr Mandela led South Africa's transition from white-minority rule in the 1990s, after 27 years in prison for his political activities. He had been receiving intensive medical care at home for a lung infection after spending three months in hospital. His body lay in state at the Union Buildings from 11 to 13 December. He was buried in his home town of Qunu in the Eastern Cape on 15 December 2013. South Africa celebrated 20 Years of Freedom in 2014, which was a historic milestone for the country.

The Twenty Year Review, which was released in 2013, and the National Planning Commission's 2011 Diagnostic Report, highlight that poverty, inequality and unemployment continue to negatively affect the lives of many people. Despite progress in reducing rural poverty and increasing access to basic services in rural areas over the past 20 years, rural areas are still characterised by great poverty and inequality. As stated in the NDP, by 2030, South Africa's rural communities must have better opportunities to participate fully in the economic, social and political life of the country.

Government's programme of radical economic transformation is about placing the economy on a qualitatively different path that ensures more rapid, sustainable growth, higher investment, increased employment, reduced inequality and deracialisation of the economy. The NDP sets a growth target of at least 5% a year, and emphasises measures to ensure that the benefits of growth are equitably shared.

South Africa's fifth general elections were held on 7 May 2014. It was also the first time that South African expatriates were allowed to vote in a South African national election. The ANC won the National Assembly election (62,1%) and the official opposition Democratic Alliance (DA) won 22,2% of the votes, while the newly formed Economic Freedom Fighters (EFF) obtained 6,4% of the vote.

The ANC also won eight of the nine provincial legislatures. The EFF obtained over 10% of the votes in Gauteng, Limpopo and North West, and beat the DA to

second place in Limpopo and North West. In the other six provinces won by the ANC, the DA obtained second place. In the Western Cape, the only province not won by the ANC, the DA increased its majority from 51,5% to 59,4%. In 2015, South Africa celebrated the 60th Anniversary of the Freedom Charter, which called for peace and friendship among nations.

The 40th Anniversary of the 16 June 1976 Soweto Student Uprising was celebrated in 2016, along with the 20th Anniversary of the signing of the Constitution of the Republic of South Africa of 1996. The 2016 municipal elections were held on 3 August 2016. The ANC won 53,9% of the total vote, followed by the official opposition DA with 26,9% and the EFF with 8,2%. In 2017, South Africa celebrated five years since the launch of the NDP, which outlines the goals to achieve the vision of a prosperous South Africa by tackling the triple challenge of unemployment, poverty and inequality by 2030.

South Africa celebrated the Centenary of the late Oliver Reginald Tambo in 2017, under the theme: “Life and Legacy of OR Tambo”. He was one of the key drivers of South Africa’s liberation and one of the founding fathers of the country’s constitutional democracy. At its 54th National Conference held at Nasrec in Soweto on 18 December 2017, the ANC elected Mr Ramaphosa as its president.

Following the resignation of President Zuma in February 2018, Mr Ramaphosa was elected unopposed as the fifth President of democratic South Africa by the National Assembly on 15 February 2018. In 2018, South Africa celebrated the centenary of two Struggle stalwarts, Tata Mandela and Mama Albertina Nontsikelelo Sisulu. In 2019, South Africa celebrated 25 Years of Freedom. In May 2019, the country also held its sixth national and provincial elections. The ANC won 57,50% of the total vote, followed by the official opposition DA with 20,77% and the EFF with 10.79%.

On 25 May 2019, Mr Ramaphosa was inaugurated as the sixth democratically elected President of South Africa. In a departure from the tradition of holding the inauguration at the Union Buildings, the event took place at Loftus Versfeld Stadium in Pretoria. On 31 December 2019, the World Health Organization reported a cluster of pneumonia cases in Wuhan City, China.

‘Severe Acute Respiratory Syndrome Coronavirus 2’ (SARSCoV-2) was confirmed as the causative agent of what we now know as ‘Coronavirus Disease 2019’ (COVID-19). Since then, the virus has spread to more than 100 countries, including South Africa.

On 15 March 2020, President Ramaphosa declared a National State of Disaster, and announced measures such as immediate travel restrictions and the closure of schools from 18 March. The declaration of the National State of Disaster empowered government to take the measures that prevented many more people from becoming severely ill and saved countless lives.

It also provided the legal basis for the introduction of the special R350 Social Relief of Distress Grant and the establishment of the COVID Temporary Employee/Employer Relief Scheme, which provided wage support to millions of workers.

On 17 March, the National Coronavirus Command Council was established to lead the nation's plan to contain the spread and mitigate the negative impact of COVID-19. On 23 March, a 21-day national lockdown was announced, starting on 27 March 2020.

President Ramaphosa announced that from 1 May 2020, a gradual and phased easing of the lockdown restrictions would begin. From 1 June, the national restrictions were lowered to Alert Level 3. The restrictions were lowered to alert Level 2 on 17 August 2020 and from 21 September 2020 restrictions were lowered to Alert Level 1.

Government declared 2021 The Year of Charlotte Mannya-Maxeke under the theme: "The Year of Charlotte Mannya-Maxeke: Realising Women's Equality". She was a pioneer, activist, artist, intellectual, internationalist and visionary. On 1 November 2021, the country held its sixth Local Government Elections. The ANC won the majority seats in 161 municipal councils, followed by the DA in 13 municipalities and the IFP in 10 municipalities. A total of 66 municipal councils were hung – meaning that no party gained an outright majority in those councils.

From the 9th to the 18th of July 2021, South Africa experienced civil unrest mainly in some parts of KwaZulu-Natal and Gauteng, which left in its wake over 354 people dead.

The Judicial Commission of Inquiry into Allegations of State Capture, Corruption and Fraud in the Public Sector, led by then Deputy Chief Justice Raymond Zondo (now Chief Justice), handed all its report to The Presidency in 2022.



Official Guide to **SOUTH AFRICA** 2021/22

PEOPLE OF SOUTH AFRICA



For 2022, Statistics South Africa estimates the mid-year population at 60,60 million people. Approximately 51,1% (approximately 30,98 million) of the population is female and approximately 48,9% (about 29,62 million) is male.

Life expectancy at birth for 2022 is estimated at 60,0 years for males and 65,6 years for females. The infant mortality rate for 2022 is estimated at 24,3 per 1 000 live births. The estimated overall HIV prevalence rate is approximately 13,9% among the South African population. The total number of people living with HIV (PLWHIV) is estimated at approximately 8,45 million in 2022. For adults aged 15–49 years, an estimated 19,6% of the population is HIV positive.

There is a reduction in international migration, which is indicative of the COVID-19 travel restrictions and subsequent impact on migratory patterns since March 2020. Migration is an important demographic process, as it shapes the age structure and distribution of the provincial population (and so the country's population structure). For the period 2021–2026, Gauteng and Western Cape are estimated to experience the largest inflow of migrants of approximately, 1 443 978 and 460 489 respectively.

Gauteng still comprises the largest share of the South African population, with approximately 16,10 million people (26,6%) living in this province. KwaZulu-Natal is the province with the second largest population, with an estimated 11,54 million people (19,0%) living in this province. With a population of approximately 1,31 million people (2,2%), Northern Cape remains the province with the smallest share of the South African population.

About 28,07% of the population is aged younger than 15 years (17,01 million) and approximately 9,2% (5,59 million) is 60 years or older. The provinces reflecting the highest percentage of children younger than 15 within its structure are Limpopo (33,6%) and Eastern Cape (32,7%).

The proportion of elderly persons aged 60 years and older in South Africa is increasing over time and as such policies and programmes to care for the needs of this growing population should be prioritised.

Registration of births

In South Africa, the right to identity – which includes nationality, name and family relations – is enshrined in Section 28 of the Constitution of the Republic of South Africa of 1996. The Births and Deaths Act of 1992 governs the registration of births in South Africa.

The Births and Deaths Registration Act of 1992 has been amended several times, with the last amendment, Births and Deaths Registration Amendment Act, being made in 2010. The registration of births in South Africa falls under the mandate of the Department of Home Affairs.

To better enforce the registration of births, the Amendment Act of 2010 mandates the registrations of births within 30 days from date of birth. The Constitution and the Act reaffirm South Africa's commitment to Articles seven and eight of the

United Nations Convention on the Rights of the Child and the African Charter on the rights and welfare of the child.

The agreements mandate the preservation of children's rights to identity, a nationality, to a name from birth, family ties and birth registration immediately after birth. The realisation of the right to be registered is closely linked to the safeguarding of a whole range of fundamental rights, including healthcare, social security, education, participation and protection.

The primary purpose of the records derived from the civil-registration process is to create a permanent record of the birth occurrence and for the issuing of a birth certificate, which is a personal document to attest birth registration and the most visible evidence of the government's legal recognition of the child. In essence, without a birth certificate the unregistered babies/children essentially do not legally exist.

Languages

South Africa is a multicultural society that is characterised by its rich linguistic diversity. Language is an indispensable tool that can be used to deepen democracy and also contribute to the social, cultural, intellectual, economic and political life of the South African society.

The country is multilingual with 11 official languages, each of which is guaranteed equal status. Most South Africans are multilingual and able to speak at least two or more of the official languages.

In terms of the Use of Official Languages Act of 2012, and as part of promoting social cohesion and nation-building, every government department, public entity and enterprise is expected to establish a language unit and adopt a language policy.

In June 2022, Cabinet approved the publication of the Constitution Eighteenth Amendment Bill of 2022 for public comments. The Bill amends Section 6(1) of the Constitution of the Republic of South Africa of 1996, which proclaims that South Africa's 11 official languages are Sepedi, Sesotho, Setswana, siSwati, Tshivenda, Xitsonga, Afrikaans, English, isiNdebele, isiXhosa and isiZulu.

The amendments will give recognition to the South African Sign Language (SASL) as the 12th official language of the country and will advance its cultural acceptance and affirm equal rights for all South Africans, irrespective of their disabilities. The Department of Basic Education already recognises the SASL as a home language.

Religious beliefs

Religious beliefs in South Africa include Christianity; Islam; Traditional African religion; Hinduism; Buddhism; Bahaism; Judaism; Atheism, Agnosticism and Satanism.



Official Guide to **SOUTH AFRICA** 2021/22

GOVERNMENT



South Africa is a constitutional democracy with a three-tier system of government and an independent judiciary. The national, provincial and local levels of government all have legislative and executive authority in their own spheres, and are defined in the Constitution of the Republic of South Africa of 1996 as distinctive, interdependent and interrelated.

Operating at both national and provincial levels are advisory bodies drawn from South Africa's traditional leaders. It is a stated intention in the Constitution that the country be run on a system of cooperative governance. Government is committed to building a free, non-racial, non-sexist, democratic, united and successful South Africa.

The Constitution

The Constitution is the supreme law of the land. No other law or government action can supersede the provisions of the Constitution. It was approved by the Constitutional Court on 4 December 1996 and took effect on 4 February 1997.

Government

Government consists of national, provincial and local spheres. The powers of the legislature, executive and courts are separate.

Parliament

Parliament consists of the National Assembly and the National Council of Provinces (NCOP). Parliamentary sittings are open to the public. Several measures have been implemented to make Parliament more accessible and accountable.

National Assembly

The National Assembly consists of no fewer than 350 and no more than 400 members, elected through a system of proportional representation for a five-year term. It elects the President and scrutinises the executive.

National Council of Provinces

The NCOP is constitutionally mandated to ensure that provincial interests are taken into account in the national sphere of government. This is done through participation in the national legislative process and by providing a national forum for consideration of issues affecting provinces. The NCOP consists of 90 provincial delegates, which is 10 delegates for each of the nine provinces.

Government clusters

Government clusters are groupings of government departments with cross-cutting programmes. Clusters foster an integrated approach to governance that is aimed at improving government planning, decision making and service delivery.

The objective is to ensure proper coordination of all government programmes at national and provincial levels. The main functions of the clusters are to ensure the alignment of government-wide priorities, facilitate and monitor the implementation of priority programmes and to provide a consultative platform on cross-cutting priorities and matters being taken to Cabinet.

The clusters of the Forum of South African Directors-General (FOSAD) mirror the Ministerial clusters. The FOSAD clusters provide technical support to the Ministerial Clusters. The Director-General in the Presidency is the chairperson of FOSAD.

The clusters are as follows:

- Economic Sectors, Investment, Employment and Infrastructure Development
- Social Protection, Community and Human Development
- Governance, State Capacity and Institutional Development
- Justice, Crime Prevention and Security
- International Cooperation, Trade and Security.

Izimbizo

The Izimbizo programme is a communication platform that enables the citizenry to have a meaningful and direct engagement with members of the national, provincial and local executive. It promotes unmediated face-to-face communication with the public.

It provides an opportunity to political principals to share government plans to improve service delivery and to listen to issues facing communities.

Inter-Ministerial Committees (IMCs)

The President of the Republic of South Africa (and in certain instances the Cabinet appoints IMCs for specific purposes that require the attention and dedication of a team of certain Ministers.

The mandate of the IMCs is limited to the matter that they are established to execute. Some of the past and present IMCs include the following:

- IMC on the Prevention and Combating of Corruption
- IMC on Information and Publicity
- IMC on State Funerals
- IMC on the Revitalisation of Distressed Mining communities
- IMC on Immigration Regulations.
- IMC on Investment Promotion
- IMC on Local Government Elections
- IMC on the Centenaries of Mama Albertina Sisulu and Tata Nelson
- IMC on the South Africa Investment Conference
- IMC on Land Reform
- IMC on Illegal Mining
- IMC on Climate Change
- IMC on Comprehensive Social Security

- IMC on Electricity Reticulation
- IMC on Energy
- IMC on the South African National AIDS Council
- IMC on District-Level Service Delivery
- IMC on Gender-Based Violence and Femicide
- IMC on Vaccines.

The Presidency

The Presidency is the executive manager of government. It is situated in the Buildings, Pretoria, and has a subsidiary office in Tuynhuys, Cape Town. The NDP offers a long-term socio-economic development road map.

The NDP: Vision for 2030 focuses on the following strategic areas of development:

- creating jobs;
- expanding infrastructure;
- sustainable use of resources;
- transforming urban and rural spaces;
- improving education and training;
- providing quality healthcare;
- building a capable state;
- fighting crime and corruption; and
- uniting the nation.

The Deputy President

The President appoints the Deputy President from among the members of the National Assembly.

The Presidency - Appointed since June 2018

- President Cyril Matamela Ramaphosa.
- Deputy President David Dabede Mabuza.

Cabinet

Cabinet consists of the President, as head of the Cabinet, the Deputy President and Ministers. The President appoints the Deputy President and Ministers, assigns their powers and functions and may dismiss them. No more than two Ministers may be appointed from outside the National Assembly.

Provincial government

Each of the nine provinces has its own legislature of 30 to 80 members. They elect the premiers who head the executive councils.

Traditional leadership

The reconstitution of the National House of Traditional and Khoi-San Leaders (NHTKL), conducted in terms of the Traditional and Khoi-San Leadership Act, of 2019, followed the reconstitution of all the Provincial Houses of Traditional and Khoi-San Leaders.

The national and provincial houses of traditional and Khoi-San leaders enhance the cooperative relationships within national and provincial government, while the establishment of local houses of traditional leaders deepens and cements the relationship between municipalities and traditional leaders on customary law and development initiatives.

Local government

Local government is the sphere of government closest to the people. In accordance with the Constitution and the Organised Local Government Act of 1997, which formally recognises organised local-government associations, organised local government may designate up to 10 part-time representatives to represent municipalities and participate in proceedings of the NCOP.

Municipalities

There are 257 municipalities in South Africa comprising eight metropolitan, 44 district and 205 local municipalities.

Municipalities govern on a four-year term basis and run local affairs subject to national and provincial legislation. They focus on growing local economies and providing infrastructure and services.

The eight metropolitan municipalities are:

- Buffalo City (East London)
- City of Cape Town
- Ekurhuleni Metropolitan Municipality (East Rand)
- City of eThekweni (Durban)
- City of Johannesburg
- Mangaung Municipality (Bloemfontein)
- Nelson Mandela Metropolitan Municipality (Port Elizabeth)
- City of Tshwane (Pretoria).

DEPARTMENT OF COOPERATIVE GOVERNANCE (DCOG)

The DCoG is mandated to develop and monitor the implementation of national policy and legislation aimed at transforming and strengthening key institutions and mechanisms of governance in national, provincial and local government to fulfil their developmental role; develop, promote and monitor mechanisms, systems and structures to enable integrated service delivery and implementation

within government; and promote sustainable development by providing support to and exercising oversight of provincial and local government.

DEPARTMENT OF TRADITIONAL AFFAIRS (DTA)

The DTA is mandated to oversee issues related to traditional affairs and support the development of stable and cohesive interfaith communities. The 2003 White Paper on Traditional Leadership and Governance sets out a national framework, and the norms and standards that define the role of the institutions of traditional leadership in South Africa.

It seeks to support and transform the institutions in accordance with constitutional imperatives, and restore the integrity and legitimacy of traditional leadership in line with the African indigenous law and customs subject to the Constitution.

DEPARTMENT OF PUBLIC SERVICE AND ADMINISTRATION (DPSA)

The DPSA draws its mandate from Section 195(1) of the Constitution of the Republic of South Africa of 1996, which sets out basic values and principles the Public Service should adhere to, and the Public Service Act of 1994.

In terms of the Act, the Minister of Public Service and Administration is responsible for establishing norms and standards relating to:

- the functions of the Public Service;
- organisational structures and establishments of departments, and other
- organisational and governance arrangements in the Public Service;
- the conditions of service and other employment practices for employees;
- labour relations in the Public Service;
- the health and wellness of employees;
- information management in the Public Service;
- electronic government;
- integrity, ethics, conduct and anti-corruption in the Public Service; and
- transformation, reform, innovation and any other matters to improve the effectiveness and efficiency of the Public Service and its service delivery to the public.

PUBLIC SERVICE COMMISSION (PSC)

The PSC is an independent institution established in terms of Chapter 10 of the Constitution and derives its mandate from sections 195 and 196 of the Constitution, which set out the values and principles governing public administration.

The commission is vested with custodial oversight responsibilities for the Public Service, and monitors, evaluates and investigates public administration practices. It has the power to issue directives on compliance with personnel procedures relating to recruitment, transfers, promotions and dismissals.

NATIONAL SCHOOL OF GOVERNMENT (NSG)

The NSG derives its mandate from the Public Service Amendment Act of 2007. In terms of the Act, the institution is mandated to provide training or effect its provision. The school responds to its mandate by developing relevant training and development programmes for delivery to South African public service officials at all levels.

Through education and training, the school promotes the progressive realisation of the values and principles governing public administration, and enhances the quality of human resource capacity in public service institutions.

CENTRE FOR PUBLIC SERVICE INNOVATION (CPSI)

The responsibility for innovation in the public sector is vested in the Minister of Public Service and Administration, in terms of Section 3(1)(i) of the Public Service Act of 1994. The CPSI is tasked by the Minister to fulfil this mandate, which includes establishing norms and standards relating to transformation, reform and innovation to improve the effectiveness and efficiency of the Public Service and its service delivery to the public.

DEPARTMENT OF PUBLIC WORKS AND INFRASTRUCTURE (DPWI)

As set out in the Government Immovable Asset Management Act of 2007, the DPWI is mandated to be the custodian and portfolio manager of government's immovable assets.

Since the creation of the Property Management Trading Entity in 2015/16, the department's role includes policy formulation, coordination, regulation and oversight relating to the provision of accommodation and expert built environment services to client departments at the national level; and, through the entity, the planning, acquisition, management and disposal of immovable assets in the department's custody.

The department is further mandated to coordinate and provide strategic leadership in initiatives for the creation of jobs through the implementation of the expanded public works programme. Public Works is constitutionally designated as a concurrent function exercised by the national and provincial levels of government.

During the February 2022 State of the Nation Address, President Ramaphosa announced the construction of 96 bridges in the 2022/23 financial year. The number of bridges that will be constructed is as follows:

- 18 – Eastern Cape;
- 36 – KwaZulu-Natal;
- 11 – Mpumalanga;
- 11 – Limpopo;
- 10 – Free State; and

- 10 – North West.

In May 2021, the Infrastructure Built Anti-Corruption Forum (IBACF) was launched, bringing together stakeholders together to foster collaboration amongst the key role players such as law-enforcement agencies, construction sector regulators, civil society, government departments and private sector to monitor infrastructure projects more effectively and put systems in place to detect and prevent corruption.

This strategic intervention comprising various private and public sector representatives, including the Special Investigating Unit, was made to mitigate the threat of corruption in the implementation of the Infrastructure Investment Plan approved by Cabinet in May 2020.

DEPARTMENT OF HOME AFFAIRS (DHA)

The mandate of the DHA is derived from the Constitution and various acts of Parliament and policy documents. The department's services are divided into two broad categories: civic services and immigration services.

As such, the department is mandated to manage citizenship and civic status; and manage international migration, which includes providing refugee protection. The execution of this mandate means that the department is a key enabler of national security, citizen empowerment, efficient administration and socio-economic development. Accordingly, these functions must be managed securely and strategically.

Establishing and operationalising the Border Management Authority (BMA), and securing international migration

The previous fragmented approach to border management, where officials from at least five organs of state work at the country's 72 ports of entry, contributed to a number of inefficiencies and poor outcomes. This is mainly due to them having varied legislative mandates, conditions of service and remuneration, competing priorities and deliverables, and dissimilar tools of trade and equipment.

A major benefit of establishing the BMA is to formalise and streamline the relationships between these relevant organs and coordinate a unified approach. This is expected to result in enhanced security and the effective management of the border environment, as well as improved customer service. As such, the authority will be responsible for restricting the illegal movement of people and goods within South Africa's border law enforcement areas and at ports of entry. The first BMA Border Guards were deployed at the Beitbridge Port of Entry, in Limpopo, in July 2022.

Modernising ICT infrastructure

The department recognises the importance of embracing technological advancements to better fulfil its mandate, function optimally and promote national security. Some of its planned technological improvements over the period ahead

include rolling out the automated biometric identification system by 2022/23 and introducing biometric functionality at all ports of entry by 2023/24, designing and developing the national identity system to replace the national population register, and rolling out the e-visa system by 2024/25.

Issuing documents to facilitate growth

The department will continue to support economic growth by issuing strategic visas such as those for critical skills, business and general work. To attract foreign business and international tourism, it will seek to simplify the visa regime through visa waiver agreements and the issuing of long-term, multiple-entry electronic visas.

By allowing prospective visitors to South Africa to apply for their visas online, for approval by a central adjudication hub, the e-visa system is expected to remove administrative bottlenecks, reduce fraud, facilitate secure and easy travel, and help build partnerships with airlines

GOVERNMENT PRINTING WORKS (GPW)

The GPW is mandated to provide security printing and ancillary services to all organs of state in all spheres of government. The entity was converted to a full government component in 2009 in terms of the Public Service Act of 1994, enabling it to operate on sound business principles.

The entity fulfils its mandate subject to policies as prescribed by the Minister of Home Affairs. Over the medium term, the entity was expected to continue focusing on producing security printed material, including identity documents/smart identity cards and travel documents; coordinating and distributing government gazettes; completing ongoing capital works projects; motivating for the adoption of its newly proposed organisational structure; and ensuring alignment with new technological developments in the printing industry.

Ongoing capital works projects include the construction of the GPW precinct and the refurbishment of the existing building. The envisaged precinct will comprise a number of campuses with self-contained and product-oriented processing centres that will allow for secure and efficient operations.

DEPARTMENT OF EMPLOYMENT AND LABOUR (DEL)

The DEL derives its legislative mandate from the Constitution, particularly the Bill of Rights, which is given effect through a number of acts that regulate labour matters in South Africa.

The most important of these are the Labour Relations Act of 1995, the Basic Conditions of Employment Act of 1997, the Employment Equity Act of 1998, the Occupational Health and Safety Act of 1993, and the Employment Services

Act of 2014. The department is mandated to regulate the labour market through policies and programmes developed in consultation with social partners. These aim to:

- improve economic efficiency and productivity;
- facilitate the creation of decent employment;
- promote labour standards and fundamental rights at work;
- provide adequate social safety nets to protect vulnerable workers;
- promote and enforce sound labour relations;
- promote equity in the workplace;
- eliminate inequality and unfair discrimination in the workplace;
- enhance occupational health and safety awareness and compliance in the workplace; and
- give value to social dialogue in the formulation of sound and responsive legislation and policies to attain labour market flexibility for the competitiveness of enterprises, balanced with the promotion of decent employment.

Providing support to work seekers

Facilitating access to decent employment is central to the department's work. As such, over the medium term, it plans to register 2.7 million work seekers, provide counselling to 750 000 work seekers and place 180 000 work seekers in registered employment opportunities.

To provide more young people with access to employment opportunities, an additional employment youth centre will be established in Germiston (Gauteng) over the medium term to complement those in Cape Town (Western Cape), De Aar (Northern Cape), Durban and Newcastle (KwaZulu-Natal), and Johannesburg (Gauteng).

To reduce the cost of looking for employment and accessing learning opportunities for young people in remote areas, nine mobile employment youth centres will also be set up over the medium term. The development of the national employment policy is expected to facilitate the provision of support to work seekers. It is aimed at providing a conducive policy environment to improve investment and productivity, and create employment through targeted interventions at the sector, firm and work-seeker levels.

Increasing safety and fairness in the workplace

Through conducting a targeted employment law compliance inspections over the MTEF period, the department aims to improve compliance with occupational health and safety standards for various sectors and as such, increase fairness in the workplace, especially for young people, disabled people and women.

In addition, the implementation of the case management system in 2022/23 is expected to ensure that the department's business processes are fully modernised, which will lead to, among other things, more focused inspections that ensure compliance and workplace safety. Over the medium term, the

department plans to serve 95% of non-compliant employers with legal notices within 14 calendar days of inspections per year.

Regulating the workplace

The department will conduct an annual review of the national minimum wage, including the development of monitoring mechanisms to measure its impact on the economy, collective bargaining, the reduction of income differentials, and proposed adjustments.

Sectors pegged below the national minimum wage, such as domestic work, will be required to be adjusted to align with the national minimum wage by the end of 2022/23. The Commission for Conciliation, Mediation and Arbitration spearheads the department's efforts to advance such efforts towards economic development, social justice, labour peace and the democratisation of the workplace.



Official Guide to **SOUTH AFRICA** 2021/22

THE PRESIDENCY



THE PRESIDENCY

The Presidency is mandated to ensure that the President can execute his constitutional responsibilities in leading and galvanising government and society to implement the electoral mandate.

Over the medium term, The Presidency aimed to continue providing support to the President and Deputy President of South Africa in the execution of their responsibilities as outlined in Chapter 5 of the Constitution of the Republic of South Africa of 1996. Accordingly, over the medium-term period, the department aimed to focus on leading and supporting the implementation of the South African Economic Reconstruction and Recovery Plan, coordinating the National Coronavirus Command Council and operationalising the e-Cabinet system.

Leading South Africa's economic reconstruction and recovery

The Presidency sees creating employment and retaining jobs as paramount to rebuilding and growing South Africa's economy. To advance government's efforts in this regard, the department will support other government departments in developing programmes that provide young people especially with management, mentoring and business skills, and access to market and network opportunities.

To this end, a key focus over the medium term will be on coordinating and facilitating the implementation of the Presidential Youth Employment Initiative (PYEI). The PYEI is meant to provide the youth with an opportunity to gain work experience, obtain skills through informal and formal training that are offered by provinces and Department of Basic Education.

As the centre of government, The Presidency continues to play a leading role in ensuring that government builds a nation that eradicates unemployment, poverty and inequality.

Coordinating government's response to the Coronavirus Disease (COVID-19) pandemic

The National Coronavirus Command Council has been at the centre of decision-making in government's efforts to curb the spread of COVID-19 and limit the impact of the pandemic. Over the medium term, the department will continue to ensure the coordination of government's responses to curb the spread of the virus.

In addition, the department will support the Deputy President of South Africa as chair of the COVID-19 Inter-Ministerial Committee, which facilitates the roll-out of government's vaccination programme, to ensure that the country's vision of saving lives is realised and that any challenges encountered during implementation are addressed.

Operationalising the e-Cabinet system

To ensure greater coordination between national departments, the department plans to continue to implement the e-Cabinet system – a collaborative platform for members of the executive, heads of department and executive support staff to share, manage and store information securely.

Over the medium term, the department will ensure that the system is in full use. This will be done by ensuring that training is provided to all users, including the executives and limited support staff managing, capturing and distributing classified information for the overall optimal functioning of Cabinet and its committees.

The Presidency has developed and drives the strategic imperatives expressed in the National Strategic Plan 2022/23, which identifies the following Top Ten acceleration interventions to deliver results towards tangible outcomes in 2022/23.

- Job creation in the public and private sector.
- Ease of doing business to stimulate private sector investment and grow productive sectors of the economy as part of recovery and addressing the jobs crisis in South Africa.
- Using preferential procurement to use public procurement to empower enterprises owned by black people, women and persons with disabilities as well as small, medium and micro enterprises and cooperatives.
- Modernisation and digitalisation of the public service and the economy in general will contribute to economic recovery.
- Interventions to immediately address household food insecurity and hunger.
- The full rollout of the vaccination programme as a critical intervention to save lives, stabilise public health and enable stabilisation, recovery and rebuilding of the economy.
- Addressing water and sanitation backlogs in schools and communities.
- Addressing the title deeds backlog is a long-standing commitment with generally poor performance.
- Interventions to reduce violent crimes, including gender-based violence and femicide (GBVF).
- While important progress has been made in combating corruption and bringing perpetrators to book, more visible progress needs to be made with regard to prosecutions for corruption and related offences.

Operation Vulindlela

Government is working to unlock the structural constraints to inclusive economic growth through a programme called Operation Vulindlela, which brings together the ability of The Presidency to coordinate across government at a political and administrative level, and the technical expertise of National Treasury.

The core purpose of Operation Vulindlela is to unleash critical sectors to

accelerate the implementation of structural reforms and enable higher economic growth. The initiative aims to modernise and transform network industries, including electricity, water, transport and digital communications. These network industries are the bedrock of economic growth, and are essential to creating a globally competitive economy.

Infrastructure and Investment Office (IIO)

The IIO which is located in The Presidency has become a single point of entry for accelerated infrastructure investment, with a particular focus on both public and private sector catalytic social and economic infrastructure projects.

Through the annual flagship programme organised by the IIO, the Sustainable Development Symposium – South Africa 2021 announced that 29 out of 50 projects gazetted in 2020 were reported to be in implementation stages. By mid-2022, the total investment value of these projects was estimated at around R119 billion.

Investment

The Presidency continues to lead the annual investment drive towards raising R1.2 trillion at the end of the five-year period. With 2022 being the fourth year of the five-year target, the drive had by mid-2022 managed to raise investment commitments of R332 billion.

In March 2022, Cabinet approved the Country Investment Strategy, which aims to position South Africa as a key preferred African investment destination by attracting and facilitating quality foreign and domestic direct investment into the country.

Presidential Employment Stimulus

The Presidential Employment Stimulus to create jobs and support livelihoods as part of supporting the economic recovery from the COVID-19 pandemic. Although the pandemic may have abated, unemployment has not. The Presidential Employment Stimulus has enabled the rapid expansion of public employment and provided much-needed relief to mitigate the effects of the pandemic.

By mid-2022, the Presidential Employment Stimulus had reached the milestone of one million participants since its inception. Its programmes range from waste collection to small-scale farming, both in urban and rural areas.

Through the employment stimulus, the Social Employment Fund was started to recruit 50 000 participants in community safety, food and nutrition, digital inclusion, and sports, arts and recreation.

Minister in The Presidency

The Minister is responsible for the:

- Department of Planning, Monitoring and Evaluation (DPME);

- Statistics South Africa (Stats SA);
- Government Communication and Information System (GCIS);
- Media Development and Diversity Agency (MDDA); and
- Brand South Africa (Brand SA).

Minister in The Presidency for Women, Youth and Persons with Disabilities

The Minister is responsible for the:

- Department of Women, Youth and Persons with Disabilities (DWYPD); and
- National Youth Development Agency (NYDA).

DEPARTMENT OF PLANNING, MONITORING AND EVALUATION

The DPME is mandated to:

- support the National Planning Commission;
- facilitate the implementation of the NDP through the development of sector-specific and outcome-specific medium-term plans and delivery agreements, and monitor and evaluate their implementation;
- ensure the alignment of departmental strategic and annual plans and budget allocations with government's Medium Term Strategic Framework (MTSF);
- monitor the performance of individual national and provincial government departments and municipalities, and facilitate targeted intervention programmes;
- monitor frontline service delivery and manage the presidential hotline;
- develop and implement the annual national evaluations plan, and support the national evaluations system; and
- promote good planning, monitoring and evaluation practices in government.

Over the medium term, the department was expected to continue focusing on contributing to improved development outcomes for the country through the coordination and institutionalisation of an integrated government planning system; monitoring government's progress on its achievement of the goals set out in the National Development Plan (NDP); providing appropriate support for the implementation of the MTSF; and advancing evidence-based planning, monitoring and evaluation.

The department aimed to address the country's development priorities through the coordination and institutionalisation of an integrated government planning system. To this end, over the period ahead, the department planned to support the development of a government strategy for alleviating poverty, unemployment and inequality, and assist in facilitating a conversation among key stakeholders to lead a social compact on issues of development.

To monitor government's progress on the realisation of the NDP's vision, the department planned to conduct integrated reviews to monitor the implementation

of the MTSF. Over the period ahead, two reports per year on the implementation of MTSF priorities will be produced and submitted to Cabinet.

The department planned to provide support the implementation of the MTSF by conducting training in collaboration with the National School of Government; and producing mid-year and annual public-service performance and capability monitoring reports that indicate corrective action to be implemented by national and provincial departments, and state-owned entities.

In its efforts to advance evidence-based planning, monitoring and evaluation over the medium term, the DPME plans to compile reports on all its research projects. Emphasis will be placed on GBVF, the National Youth Policy and the 16 Days of Activism campaign.

STATISTICS SOUTH AFRICA

Statistics South Africa is a national department accountable to the Minister in the Presidency. The department's activities are regulated by the Statistics Act of 1999, which mandates the department to advance the production, dissemination, use and coordination of official and other statistics to assist organs of state, businesses, other organisations and the public in planning, monitoring, policy development and decision-making.

The Act also requires that the department coordinates statistical production among organs of state in line with the purpose of official statistics and statistical principles.

Over the medium term, the department planned continue focusing on modernising its operating model, strengthening statistical reform, implementing the continuous population survey and releasing the results of the national population census (Census 2022).

The department's digital transformation programme to modernise and automate the statistical value chain has been accelerated by the COVID-19 pandemic. As such, various computer-assisted methodologies have been introduced in household and census survey operations.

The Statistics Amendment Bill was drafted in 2019/20 to drive statistical reform. Further engagements on the Bill with relevant stakeholders, including the Information Regulator, took place in 2020/21. The amended Bill is scheduled to be rolled out over the medium term following the adoption of the changes. The Statistician-General will also aim to drive reform by setting statistical frameworks, standards and classifications as a basis to certify statistics as official.

As part of the continuous population survey, the department aimed to measure living conditions by collecting data on household income and expenditure patterns. A sample of 30 000 households across the country will be included in the income and expenditure survey planned for 2022/23.

GOVERNMENT COMMUNICATION AND INFORMATION SYSTEM

The mandate of the GCIS is derived from Section 195(g) of the Constitution of the Republic of South Africa of 1996, which stipulates that the public should be provided with information that is timely, accurate and accessible. This is in support of the constitutional principles of freedom of expression, and transparent and open governance.

The department is responsible for providing strategic leadership and coordinating government communication to ensure that the public are informed and have access to government programmes and policies that benefit them.

To expand its reach to more South Africans, the department harnesses and coordinates various communication structures across the government communication system. Essential to doing this economically is joint planning, the sharing of resources and the integration of efforts among government departments.

The GCIS continues to drive a variety of its own products and platforms to ensure that information reached South Africans. These included print and electronic media, government products such as fortnightly *Vuk'uzenzele* newspaper, daily News Service (SAnews); weekly *My District Today* newsletter, monthly *Public Sector Manager* magazine and annual *South Africa Yearbook*.

Vuk'uzenzele newspaper, which is distributed digitally and physically countrywide, is the only national publication that is focused on government's key priorities, with an emphasis on service delivery programmes and the opportunities created by government. The department also facilitates the implementation of approved media-buying campaigns.

The department also engages with the public through campaigns and outreach programmes. These include community radio talk shows, activations at taxi ranks and malls, information blitzes on commuter trains, and social media campaigns. It also holds a community and stakeholder engagements term in the form of dialogues, meetings, webinars and community radio talk shows with sector departments, civil society, youth formations, faith-based organisations and business forums.

In addition to these initiatives, the department conducts development communication projects to enhance service delivery and keep citizens informed and empowered on government's progress and projects.

Media Development and Diversity Agency

The MDDA's core activity is to provide financial and non-financial support to community broadcast projects, and community and small commercial media print and digital projects. Its emphasis is on promoting indigenous languages and contributing to community development and the alleviation of poverty and inequality.

Over the medium term, it planned to intensify its focus on communities – such as people with disabilities – who are underserved by mainstream media, and on issues associated with gender and young people.

The agency plans to ensure the sustainability of the community media sector over the medium term by investing in initiatives that support skills development.

Brand South Africa

Brand SA works to improve South Africa’s global competitiveness index ranking, and boost business confidence in the country and the country’s reputation in the region and the world. Over the medium term, the entity aimed to focus on making the South African brand more attractive, and thereby more competitive, both domestically and internationally.

DEPARTMENT OF WOMEN, YOUTH AND PERSONS WITH DISABILITIES

The DWYPD is mandated in terms of Section 9(3) of the Constitution of the Republic of South Africa of 1996 to further the participation of women, youth and people with disabilities in interventions that enable their empowerment and socioeconomic upliftment.

Over the medium-term period, the department aimed continue focusing on strengthening the coordination of the national response to GBVF; promoting more responsive planning, budgeting, monitoring and evaluation in government; protecting the rights of people with disabilities; and supporting the participation of young people in the mainstream economy.

Addressing GBVF and supporting empowerment

In an effort to curb the scourge of abuse, the National Council on GBVF was scheduled to be launched in 2022. With support from this advisory forum, the department planned facilitate public awareness and advocacy events, and support and monitor the implementation of frameworks such as the National Strategic Plan on GBVF.

Promoting responsive planning, budgeting, monitoring and evaluation across government

The department will continue to coordinate and monitor the implementation of responsive planning, budgeting, monitoring and evaluation mechanisms across government on issues pertaining to gender, young people and people with disabilities.

This will entail assessing other departments’ strategic and annual performance plans, and guiding responses to policy priorities pertaining to the department’s core constituents.

To realise equal and entrenched rights for women, young people and people with disabilities, the department planned to actively seek to identify gaps in government's gender policy and advise on how best to respond to citizens' concerns. As such, it planned to conduct 12 meetings with members of the public and four community mobilisation events in each year over the medium-term period.

National Youth Development Agency

The NYDA Act of 2008 is the founding legislation of the NYDA. The agency's role is to initiate, implement, facilitate and monitor youth development interventions aimed at facilitating the empowerment of young people and their participation in economic activity, and promoting social cohesion.

Over the medium-term period, it planned to continue focusing on providing interventions to support the creation of decent employment and the development of skills, and encourage entrepreneurship, for all young people.

These interventions will take the form of financial and non-financial support to enable young people to access skills and jobs, establish and sustain enterprises, and gain access to markets. Financial support is provided through grants to township and rural enterprises run by young people, whereas non-financial support includes accounting, website development, business plan writing and marketing.

The National Youth Service Programme is part of the Presidential Youth Employment Initiative, which seeks to provide social assistance through public employment, to ensure that young people stay engaged in service to their communities and build the spirit of patriotism, solidarity, social cohesion and unity in diversity.



Official Guide to **SOUTH AFRICA** 2021/22

**AGRICULTURE, LAND REFORM AND
RURAL DEVELOPMENT**



The mandate of the Department of Agriculture, Land Reform and Rural Development (DALRRD) includes developing agricultural value chains, providing agricultural inputs, and monitoring production and consumption in the agriculture sector, as well as facilitating comprehensive rural development.

The department executes its mandate by implementing, managing and overseeing key legislation, including the:

- **Conservation of Agricultural Resources Act of 1983**, which makes provision for control over the use of the country's natural agricultural resources to conserve soil, water sources and vegetation;
- **Agricultural Product Standards Act of 1990**, which provides for control over the sale and export of certain agricultural products, and the sale of some imported agricultural products;
- **Provision of Land and Assistance Act of 1993**, which makes provision for the designation of certain land, the regulation of the subdivision of such land, and the settlement of people on it. It also provides for the acquisition, maintenance, planning, development, improvement and disposal of property, and the provision of financial assistance for land reform;
- **Restitution of Land Rights Act of 1994**, which makes provision for the restitution of rights to land to people or communities dispossessed of such rights after 19 June 1913 because of racially discriminatory laws or practices of the past. To administer this task, the act established a Commission on the Restitution of Land Rights and a Land Claims Court;
- **Spatial Planning and Land Use Management Act of 2013**, which seeks to enable the transformation of South Africa's settlement patterns by adopting a new approach to spatial planning and the management of land use.

Over the medium term, the department was expected to continue focusing on improving agricultural production and revitalising essential agricultural infrastructure; accelerating land reform and finalising land restitution claims; and increasing its research and development capacity to improve the agricultural value chain and increase the safety and quality of agricultural products.

Improving agricultural production and revitalising infrastructure

Extension officers support farmers with decision-making by providing them with information on effective and sustainable farming practices based on current research. They are essential in providing a link between farmers and new markets and are therefore central to economic transformation and job creation in this sector.

In recognition of their vital role, the department planned to employ 10 000 extension officers over the medium term, which is set to result in a five-fold improvement in the ratio of extension officers to farmers. The department also planned to upgrade 21 fresh produce markets across the country and revitalise five irrigation schemes to make production schemes functional. It will also

continue to assess the viability and allocation of state land (including communal land) for production.

Accelerating land reform and finalising land restitution claims

The department aimed to acquire 130 687 hectares of productive land for land reform purposes at a projected cost of R3 billion over the medium term to address social injustice and inequality through accelerated land reform. To fund this, the department has adopted a blended finance model comprising grant and loan portions.

Increasing research and development capacity to improve agricultural outputs

Over the period ahead, the department planned to enhance capacity in research and development to improve logistics, market access, and the safety and quality of agricultural products. This entails streamlining the policy and legislative framework related to quarantine and regulated plant pest surveillances to improve market access through surveillance and export certification.

As part of its efforts to strengthen biosecurity, sanitary and phytosanitary standards for agricultural products, the department aimed to protect existing international markets and open new ones. This includes commissioning studies to inform biosecurity decision-making, particularly on the management and control of pests and diseases.

Role of agriculture

Agriculture plays an important role in the process of economic development and can contribute significantly to household food security. Agriculture has shown buoyancy over the past two years, growing by 13.4% year-on-year in 2020 and 8.3% in 2021. The employment figures in the sector were at 868 000 in the fourth quarter of 2021, reflecting stability over the past few years.

According to Statistics South Africa's General Household Survey (GHS) of 2021, only 17,2% of South African households were involved in some sort of agricultural production activities during the reference period. Households in Limpopo (37,9%), Eastern Cape (33,4%) and Mpumalanga (32,2%) were most involved, while only 2,9% of households in Western Cape, and 6,4% of households in Gauteng engaged in some agricultural activity.

According to the GHS, more than four-fifths (85,0%) of South African households that were involved in agriculture were involved in an attempt to secure an additional source of food. Another 4% of households engaged in agriculture as subsistence activity (producing the main source of food), while 5% used agriculture to produce additional income. Households that were engaged in agricultural production, 63,9% grew fruit and vegetables, 51,7% cultivated grains and 34,0% produced poultry, while livestock were produced by 26,0% of the country's households.

Agri-Industrial Fund

Agricultural financing remains the critical element in ensuring that agriculture remains the productive sector of the economy, which contributes to food security, poverty alleviation and job creation. Production finance needs to take into consideration the variables that are inherent in the cycle of production of relevant commodities as well as risks. Non-financial services to producers are equally important in order to reduce the default rate from farmers.

Master plans:

Agriculture and Agro-processing Masterplan (AAMP)

After recognising different challenges constraining the growth and development of commercial and emerging farmers in the country, the AAMP had recommended the adoption of a “Theory of Change” to train farmers and grow the agricultural sector in an inclusive manner.

The theory advocates for a co-existence of commercial and emerging farmers to promote the agricultural and food sectors on a new growth trajectory that can ultimately contribute to taking South Africa’s economy out of the “Middle Income” trap. This AAMP is complementary to the Poultry and Sugar Master plans.

Cannabis Masterplan

The legalisation and commercialisation of cannabis have been at the forefront of public debate and on top of the agenda of policymakers globally. An interdepartmental team comprising representatives from various departments was established to guide the development of the National Cannabis Master Plan with the DALRRD as the convener.

The department was expected to start, begin issuing and monitoring permits for the production of hemp in South Africa from October 2021. By mid-2022, 31 hemp permits had been issued. To ensure an inclusive value chain, the DALRRD will be working with Agricultural Research Council (ARC) to set up demonstration farms in all nine provinces, to ensure education of primary producers on the appropriation production technologies.

Poultry Masterplan

In support of the Poultry Masterplan, six black-owned and operated farms have been supported. These farms produce 1,9 million birds a month.

Role players

Land and Agricultural Development Bank of South Africa

As a development finance institution, the mandate of the Land and Agricultural Development Bank of South Africa is to address agricultural and rural development in South Africa. The bank operates in the primary agriculture and agribusiness

sectors, and is regulated by the Land and Agricultural Development Bank Act of 2002 and the Public Finance Management Act of 1999. The bank plays a pivotal role in advancing agriculture and rural development.

Agricultural Research Council

The ARC was established by the Agricultural Research Act of 1990, which mandates the council to conduct research and development, and effect the transfer of technology in the agriculture sector; contribute to a better quality of life; and facilitate and ensure natural resource conservation.

KwaZulu-Natal Ingonyama Trust Board

The KwaZulu-Natal Ingonyama Trust Act of 1994 provides for approximately 2.8 million hectares of land spread across KwaZulu-Natal to be held in trust by the Ingonyama Trust on behalf of communities. The affairs of the Ingonyama Trust and trust land are administered by the KwaZulu-Natal Ingonyama Trust Board, which was established in terms of the Act.

The board is responsible for providing land tenure rights to an estimated 4.5 million people living on trust land under the jurisdiction of 241 traditional councils. The board's focus over the period ahead will be on improving land tenure administration, protecting land from illegal occupants and providing appropriate spatial planning for integrated development.

National Agricultural Marketing Council (NAMC)

The NAMC is a statutory organisation of the DALLRD. It derives its mandate from the Marketing of Agricultural Products Act of 1996, which provides for the authorisation, establishment and enforcement of regulatory measures to intervene in the marketing of agricultural products, including the introduction of statutory measures on agricultural products.

The council was expected to continue to coordinate the work of agricultural industry trusts; undertake thorough research aimed at advising the Minister of Agriculture, Land Reform and Rural Development and affected groups on marketing matters; and work directly with farmers to address their marketing matters.

Office of the Valuer-General (OVG)

The Property Valuation Act of 2014 prescribes that the OVG must be impartial in exercising its powers and performing its functions, and be accountable to the Minister of Agriculture, Land Reform and Rural Development.

The Act states that the office must value all land to be acquired for the purpose of land reform in accordance with a defined set of criteria based on Section 25(3) of the Constitution of the Republic of South Africa of 1996.

Onderstepoort Biological Products

OBP was established as a public company in terms of the OBP Incorporation Act of 1999. Its mandate is to prevent and control animal diseases that impact food security, human health and livelihoods. This is achieved through the continued development and efficient manufacturing of innovative pharmaceutical products, including vaccines and related products.

Perishable Products Export Control Board (PPECB)

The PPECB is an independent service provider for quality assurance, food safety and cold chain management services for producers and exporters of perishable food products. It is mandated by government in terms of the following legislation: the Perishable Products Export Control Act of 1983, which broadly requires the board to ensure the orderly export of perishables and monitor the proper maintenance of a continuous cold chain for exports; and the Agricultural Products Standards Act of 1990, which broadly requires the board to monitor the minimum quality standards of perishable exports as required by government and bilateral agreements with importing countries.

Registration of Deeds Trading Account

The Deeds Registries Act of 1937 provides for the administration of the land registration system and the registration of rights to land. The main goal of the trading account is to contribute to effective land planning, administration and property registration.



Official Guide to **SOUTH AFRICA** 2021/22

COMMUNICATIONS



Department of Communications and Digital Technologies (DCDT)

The DCDT is mandated to enable South Africa's digital transformation to achieve digital inclusion and economic growth by creating an enabling policy and regulatory environment.

This is done through the implementation of the 2016 *National Integrated Information and Communications Technology (ICT) Policy White Paper*, which provides for the participation of multiple stakeholders for inclusive digital transformation; interventions to reinforce competition and facilitate innovation across the value chain; measures to address issues raised by ICT and convergence; and the establishment of a new national postal policy framework.

It also provides for policies to address the digital divide and affordable access, supply-side issues and infrastructure rollout, and demand-side issues to facilitate inclusivity. The department derives its mandate from several acts and policies, including the:

- **Films and Publications Act of 1996**, as amended, which provides for the classification of certain films and publications, and establishes the Film and Publication Board and the appeals tribunal;
- **Postal Services Act of 1998**, as amended, which provides for the regulation of postal services
- **Broadcasting Act of 1999**, as amended, which establishes broadcasting policy in South Africa
- **Independent Communications Authority of South Africa (ICASA) Act of 2000**, which establishes the regulator in the sector
- **Electronic Communications Act of 2005**, as amended, which provides the legal framework for convergence in the broadcasting, broadcasting signal distribution, and telecommunications sectors. It also allows for the granting of new licences and social obligations; the control of the radio frequency spectrum; and the regulation of electronic communication network services, electronic communication services, and broadcasting services.

Over the medium term, the department planned to focus mainly on implementing the broadcasting digital migration policy to release high-demand spectrum, which would aid socio-economic development and bridge the digital divide; rolling out broadband to government facilities through the South Africa Connect project; and implementing the legislative programme to support the 2016 *National Integrated ICT Policy White Paper*.

Digital migration

To fast-track the Broadcast Digital Migration (BDM) project, the department has revised its delivery model. All analogue transmitters were expected to have been shut down by the end of 2021/22. The bulk of funding for this project had been transferred to the Universal Service and Access Fund and the South African Post

Office (SAPO) in previous financial years and had been retained by the entities with approval from National Treasury where required.

The BDM process is a critical digital transformations step that redefines the ICT path for South Africa.

By March 2022, the BDM programme had achieved the following critical milestones:

- Switched off 100% or 84 M-Net analogue sites; 52% or 163 (of 314) SABC analogue sites and 9% or eight (of 93) eTV analogue sites.
- Concluded analogue switch-off in five provinces – Free State, Northern Cape, North West, Mpumalanga and Limpopo.
- Started installing set-top boxes (STBs) in all nine provinces, scheduled to be completed by end of September 2022.

To compliment the work of the Department of Trade, Industry and Competition on the directives to prohibit the importation and distribution of analogue TV sets in South Africa, the DCDT was expected to gazette a framework for IDTVs (digital TV sets) and STBs to qualify to carry the Go Digital logo in a quest to protect South Africans to identify correct digital TVs in the retail market.

The Analogue Switch-Off programme is supporting more than 987 installer companies and has created more than 14 800 jobs for locals, predominantly young installers.

Spectrum Auction

The completion of analogue switch-off by 30 June 2022 was of national importance because the Communications Regulator (ICASA) had successfully completed the auction for the high-demand spectrum and committed to the licensee that they would have access to the relevant spectrum from 1 July 2022. ICASA concluded the high frequency communication spectrum auction in March 2022.

The 1 July 2022 date for the availability of the high-demand spectrum to the licensee was also important for National Treasury to have access to the much-needed R14.4 billion that was raised during the spectrum auction.

The release of the high-demand spectrum will improve the ability of mobile telecommunications operators to build robust telecommunications with better penetration and reach as the DCDT chases the goal of ensuring that all South Africans have access to the internet by 2024. To this end, the mobile telecommunications operators are starting to upgrade the telecommunications network and to build robust 5G telecommunication networks.

Through ICASA, the DCDT has installed social obligations that will see the telecommunications operators connecting schools, clinics and hospitals, traditional authority offices, libraries and Thusong Service Centres over the next few months. The availability of spectrum was expected to also result in the reduction of the cost of communication.

The department planned to progressively work on policy instruments to drive the reduction of cost to communicate in South Africa, including the classification of data as a new basic utility at the same level as water and electricity.

The department published for public comment a revised Spectrum Policy by July 2022, which included proposals of spectrum for small, medium and micro enterprises (SMMEs), and network and data services in a manner that drives meaningful SMME participation in the telecommunications sector.

South Africa (SA) Connect

The department will continue to provide broadband connectivity to government facilities through the SA Connect project, which will be supported by relevant state-owned entities.

The most fundamental requirement for a digital South Africa is access to connectivity networks by all, irrespective of geographic location and economic standing. To ensure access to broadband connectivity by all, Cabinet approved revised model and implementation plan for the SA Connect Phase 2 programme that will ensure South Africa achieves a goal of universal access to internet by all 2024.

In terms of the revised SA Connect model, Sentech and Broadband InfraCo and (BBI) – working with the SMMEs that are access network service providers, internet service providers and mobile virtual network operators – will roll out 33 539 community Wi-Fi hotspots to cater for 5 830 208 households over a three-year period.

The partnership with SMMEs in the telecommunications sector is part of government's commitment to the transformation of the telecommunications industry by supporting emerging telecommunications players. The SA Connect drive will expand from the core network-owned BBI, other state-owned entities and telecommunications infrastructure operators as well as the satellite service of Sentech.

The SA Connect project is estimated to provide opportunities to approximately 120 SMMEs for core network build, and create employment opportunities of more than 3 700 people, both skilled professionals and semi-skilled labour force. By mid-2022, work had commenced to connect 412 sites in the Eastern Cape and Northern Cape. with work in both provinces.

SITA was expected to provide and maintain connectivity to 15 691 government sites over the next three years. The funding for connecting government sites is provided for in the ICT budgets of respective government departments including provincial governments.

Digitization of Broadcasting

The completion of the BDM further gives South Africa an opportunity to trigger growth of the broadcasting and entertainment sector, commonly known as the creatives industry through the licensing of new broadcasters and creating platforms of the future to deliver content to South Africans.

In this regard, SENTECH has developing a cloud-based Hybrid streaming platform for content distribution. This platform will support distribution of content

through broadband, satellite, and terrestrial distribution networks. The platform enables access to commercial, community and public broadcast services (Radio and TV channels) and has the capability to provide information to the public as and when required. Access to the platform will also support mobile applications for both iOS, Android and Harmony devices.

In March 2022, the DCDT announced plans to issue policy directives for the availability of additional multiplexes for both DTT and DTH to avail additional TV channels, capacity for 102 TV channels by 2025, to boost the growth of the creatives industry. Engagements with the SABC were underway about additional channels it requires to support its competitiveness and profitability, and with community broadcasters and other emerging and new broadcasters to utilise available and additional channels.

The department was expected to finalise the Draft Audio and Audio-Visual Content Services Policy and Bill to protect the competitiveness and growth of the South African broadcasting and creative industry, and amend the requirements for entry to advance media diversity whilst enabling the participation of South Africans.

In addition, technological convergence has created regulatory overlaps and duplications where they did not exist before. To deal with this fragmentation, a single content regulatory system that is tech- and platform neutral, that includes a single content rating system, was needed to create a harmonised system. The Films and Publication Amendment Act of 2019 has significantly extended the scope of the Films and Publication Board towards this objective.

Digitizing government

By digitizing processes, government can enhance services, save money and improve citizens' quality of life. By digitizing, governments can also provide services that meet the evolving expectations of citizens and businesses, even in a period of tight budgets.

SITA in consultation with the Departments of Public Service and Administration (DPSA) and DCDT, planned to finalise a Government Digitization Plan. Some of the programmes to digitize the South African Government include:

Single View of the Indigent project

This system is built on the database created by SITA to enable SAPO to receive applications for government STBs for the BDM project. The system has now been expanded for use to manage housing subsidy beneficiaries by the Department of Human Settlements (DHS), with back-end integration to the Housing Subsidy System (HSS). Other government departments were expected to expand the system to their environments in the future.

Towards e-Learning

To expand the work of bridging the digital divide through digitizing South Africa, zaDNA is partnering with the Department of Basic Education to deploy domain

names in public schools through the provision of websites and email addresses to learners and educators.

Paperless government

The COVID-19 pandemic has propelled government to embrace electronic communications. The department, in collaboration with SITA and the DPSA, planned to ensure that, at a minimum, all national departments go-paperless by using electronic workflow by the end of the 2022/23 financial year. This will improve the efficiency of government and maintain the integrity of government records.

e-Government

The DCDT and SITA, in consultation with the DPSA and The Presidency, planned to revise the National e-Government Strategy to align the government digitisation plan. The focus of the roll-out of e-services will remain on prioritising high impact public services that meet the evolving expectations of citizens and businesses. Citizens must be able to access bulk of government services without the need to travel or braving the long queues.

Digitech Platform

In May 2022, the DCDT unveiled the DigiTech platform (www.digitech.gov.za) for digital products/applications (apps) developed by SMMEs in South Africa. DigiTech serves as a digital distribution service developed, maintained and operated by the South African Government.

The platform allows users to browse and download apps developed across operating systems. It promotes South African developed digital products/apps for purposes of expand their adoption and use.

Entities

Sentech

Sentech was established in terms of the Sentech Act of 1996, and is responsible for providing broadcasting signal distribution services to licensed TV and radio broadcasters.

The entity derives its revenue through TV, radio and streaming services rendered to customers, and the remainder through transfers from the department through project-specific funding for dual illumination, which is the operation of analogue and digital signals.

South African Broadcasting Corporation

The SABC derives its mandate from the Broadcasting Act of 1999. It is mandated to provide broadcasting and information services through a wide range of programming that displays South African talent in educational and entertainment programmes; offer diverse views through a variety of news, information and

analysis; and advance national and public interests through popular sports, for example.

Among these are the repeal of legislation that mandates pay-TV networks to carry the corporation's channels for which adequate compensation has not been finalised; and policy and regulatory support that makes it obligatory for pay-TV service providers to oblige their subscribers to have valid TV licences. The corporation is enacting other commercial strategies to increase revenue, audience share and operational efficiencies. As such, the corporation will enhance its focus on new and compelling content.

South African Post Office

The SAPO is a government business enterprise established to provide postal and related services to the public, and derives its mandate from the Postal Services Act of 1998 and the SAPO SOC Ltd Act of 2011.

The Postal Services Act of 1998 grants the post office an exclusive mandate to conduct postal services in the reserved sector for items such as letters, postcards and parcels less than one kilogram. This Act provides for the regulation of postal services and the operational functions of the postal company, including universal service obligations. The SAPO generates revenue through the provision of postal and courier services.

State Information Technology Agency

The SITA was established through the SITA Act of 1998 and is mandated to provide IT, information systems and related services to and on behalf of government departments and organs of state. This includes the provision and maintenance of transversal information and data-processing systems and their associated services, the maintenance of secure information systems, and the execution of its functions according to approved policies and standards.

Broadband Infraco

Broadband Infraco's legislative mandate, as set out in the Broadband Infraco Act of 2007, is to provide ICT infrastructure and broadband capacity in South Africa. Its main objectives are to expand the availability and affordability of access to electronic communications, including but not limited to underdeveloped and underserved areas; ensure that the bandwidth requirements for specific projects of national interests are met; and enable the State to provide affordable access to electronic communications networks and services.

Over the medium term, the entity aimed to focus on implementing the South Africa Connect broadband policy, and on expanding and maintaining its long-haul network to support client needs. This will also include monitoring the performance of the undersea West Africa cable system, which enables connectivity between Europe and Africa. The entity facilitates the connection of 713 government sites to broadband, and aims to maintain the time taken to restore faults on the core network at 7.5 hours.

Film and Publication Board (FPB)

The FPB was established in terms of the Films and Publications Act of 1996, as amended. Its mandate is to regulate the creation, production, possession and distribution of certain publications and films by classifying them; imposing age restrictions on content; and rendering the exploitative use of children in pornographic publications, films or online material punishable.

Independent Communications Authority of South Africa

ICASA was established by the ICASA Act of 2000 to regulate the South African communications, broadcasting and postal services sectors. As a Chapter 9 institution in terms of the Constitution of the Republic of South Africa of 1996, it derives its mandate from the Electronic Communications Act of 2005 to license and regulate electronic communications and broadcasting services, and the Postal Services Act of 1998 to license and regulate the postal services sector.

The authority is empowered to monitor licensee compliance with licence terms and conditions, develop regulations for the three sectors, plan and manage the radio frequency spectrum, and protect consumers in relation to these services.

National Electronic Media Institute of South Africa (NEMISA)

NEMISA was established as a non-profit institute for education in terms of the Companies Act of 2008. Its programmes were initially structured to enhance the market readiness of students in broadcasting, but its mandate has been expanded to include the development of South Africans' e-skills capacity.

The institute is also responsible for the implementation of e-skills programmes in collaboration with its partners.

Universal Service and Access Agency of South Africa (USAASA)

USAASA was established in terms of Section 80 of the Electronic Communications Act of 2005. Its sole mandate is to promote universal service and access to electronic communications and broadcasting services.

Communication platforms

Radio

The SABC's national radio network of 19 radio stations reach over 28 million South Africans. The top five most listened to radio stations in the country are Ukhozi FM, Umhlobo Wenene FM, Lesedi FM, Thobela FM and Metro FM.

Commercial radio stations

Commercial radio stations in South Africa include:

- Algoa FM
- Classic FM
- Kaya FM
- YFM

- Highveld Stereo
- 702 Talk Radio
- Metro FM
- 5FM
- Good Hope FM
- Jacaranda FM
- OFM
- East Coast Radio
- Cape Talk 567
- Radio 2000
- Capricorn FM
- Power FM
- Radio KFM
- Tru FM.

Community radio

In terms of Section 7 of the Electronic Communications Act of 2005, it is unlawful to provide or operate a broadcasting service without a licence. There are more than 165 licensed community stations in South Africa, which broadcast in a number of languages.

Television

Statistics South Africa's (Stats SA) General Household Survey (GHS) of 2021 shows that 87,7% of households owned TVs. SABC TV consists of three free-to-air (FTA) channels namely, SABC1, SABC2 and SABC3 as well as two channels carried on a subscription digital satellite network, SABC Encore and the 24-hour news channel (Channel 404), SABC News.

SABC News offers breaking news and continuous news updates in 51 African countries. SABC1, SABC2 and SABC3 attract on average 28 million South African viewers a month, as they deliver top quality local and international content. SABC Encore, a retro channel which showcases programming from the 1980s, is an integral part of the SABC's strategy moving into a multichannel environment.

Community TV

There are at least 12 community TV stations operational in different parts of South Africa, including Soweto TV; GauTV; 1KZN; Cape Town TV; Tshwane TV; Mpuma Kapa TV and Onse TV.

FTA TV

e.tv is South Africa's first private and largest English-medium channel. The channel also has a pan-African presence through e.tv Africa, which is distributed on the DStv Africa bouquet and by local affiliates in African countries.

Satellite broadcasting

eNews Channel Africa (eNCA) is South Africa's first and most watched independent 24-hour TV news channel on the DStv platform (Channel 403). eNCA's digital division provides an audience of 1.5 million monthly users with an immersive experience, combining the power of text, image and video with the accessibility and portability of online news. By end of 2021, eNCA had 3.2m followers on Twitter, 2.6m followers on Facebook, 1.1m YouTube subscribers and over a quarter of a million Instagram followers.

The SABC has a 24-hour news channel on DStv (Channel 404). Newzroom Afrika is a 24-hour TV news station on DStv (Channel 405).

Internet

Stats SA's GHS of 2021 shows that 77,5% of South African households had at least one member who had access to, or used the Internet at locations such as their homes, work, place of study, internet cafés, or at public hot spots. Access to the Internet using all available means was highest in Western Cape (89,1%) and Gauteng (86,7%), and lowest in Limpopo (63,7%) and Eastern Cape (64,7%).

About one-tenth (10,4%) of South African households had access to fixed Internet at home. Access to the Internet at home was highest among households in Western Cape (25,9%) and Gauteng (16,4%), and lowest in Mpumalanga (1,7%) and Limpopo (1,9%).

Household access to the Internet at home was highest in Western Cape (25,9%) and Gauteng (16,4%) and lowest in Mpumalanga (1,7%) and Limpopo (1,9%). While 17,2% of households in metropolitan areas had access to the Internet at home, this was true for only 1,2% of rural households in general and less than one per cent of rural households in Eastern Cape (0,2%), North West (0,3%) and KwaZulu-Natal (0,2%).

A larger percentage of households access the Internet at work (17,6%), Internet cafés or at educational institutions (13,6%) than at home (10,4%). Households in Gauteng (27,8%) and Western Cape (22,2%) were most likely to access the Internet at work, while those in North West (6,6%) were least likely to do so.

Using mobile devices to access the Internet includes access on cellular telephones or using mobile access devices such as 3G cards. It is clear from Table 13.1 that mobile access to the Internet has made it much more accessible to households in rural areas. Nationally, Internet access using mobile devices (69,4%) was the most common form of access to the Internet.

Although the use of mobile Internet access devices in rural areas (59,2%) still lags behind its use in urban (73,7%) and metro areas (73,4%), it is much more common in rural areas than any of the alternative methods.

Social media

About 40% of South Africa's population, some 22.89 million people out of an estimated population of over 57 million, are active social media users.

Telecommunications

South Africa has four major mobile operators, namely Cell C, MTN, Vodacom and Telkom Mobile.

According to Stats SA's GHS of 2021, nationally, only 2,2% of households did not have access to either landlines or cellular phones while only 0,5% of South African households only used landlines. By comparison, 90,8% of South African households exclusively use cellular phones. The exclusive use of cellular phones was most common in the Eastern Cape (94,2%) and lowest in KwaZulu-Natal (86,3%).

Households that had higher usage of both cellular phones and landlines were most common in the Western Cape (9,7%) and KwaZulu-Natal (9,6%).

The media

South Africa has a vibrant and independent media, with print, broadcast and online offerings.

Print

Newspapers

Most South African newspapers and magazines are organised into several major publishing houses. These include Media24 (part of Naspers), Independent Media, Caxton Publishers & Printers and Tiso Blackstar Group. Other important media players include M&G Media; the Natal Witness Printing & Publishing Company; Primedia Publishing; Highbury Media and Kagiso Media.

Magazines

According to figures released by the Audit Bureau of Circulations of South Africa, there has been a steady decline in magazine circulation in South Africa, with only a handful of commercial magazines achieving a steady increase in circulation.

Media organisations and role players

The **Publishers Support Services (PSS)** is an umbrella body incorporating print and digital media. It is a natural progression from the long-established Print Media South Africa and illustrates its commitment as an interactive organisation to keeping pace with the fast-changing media world of the 21st Century.

An evolving and vibrant association, its express purpose is to represent and promote all aspects concerning the industry and its members. PSS is a non-profit, voluntary association. Its membership includes more than 500 newspapers and magazine titles that cater for four different language groups.

The **South African National Editors' Forum** promotes excellence in journalism through fighting for media freedom, writing policy submissions, research, education and training programmes. The **Forum of Journalists for Transformation** addresses issues that directly affect its members.

The **Press Council**, the **Press Ombud** and the **Appeals Panel** are an independent co-regulatory mechanism set up by the print and online media to provide impartial, expeditious and cost-effective adjudication to settle disputes between newspapers, magazines and online publications, on the one hand, and members of the public, on the other, over the editorial content of publications.

The **Freedom of Expression Institute (FXI)** was formed to defend freedom of expression, to oppose censorship, to promote access to information and knowledge, and to promote media diversity. The FXI is the leading organisation on issues of freedom of expression and access to information as enshrined in the Bill of Rights in Section 16 of the Constitution of the Republic of South Africa of 1996.

The **Forum of Community Journalists** is an independent, non-profit, non-racial and voluntary organisation striving to promote and express the interests of all journalists employed on a permanent or freelance basis at regional community newspapers, magazines and online community publications in South Africa.

The **Broadcasting Complaints Commission of South Africa (BCCSA)** serves as a voluntary watchdog to adjudicate complaints from the public about programmes flighted by members who subscribe to its code of conduct.

The **National Association of Broadcasters (NAB)** is a voluntary association that was formed in 1993 to foster and promote the development of a sustainable and robust broadcasting system in South Africa. It established the BCCSA and supports the principles of democracy, freedom of expression and the diversity of voices. As the leading representative of South Africa's regulated broadcasting industry, the NAB has over the last 25 years responded to policy and regulatory processes toward an enabling environment that strengthens the industry.

Media Monitoring Africa is a non-profit organisation that acts in a watchdog role to promote ethical and fair journalism that supports human rights. The National Community Radio Forum lobbies for the airwaves in South Africa to be diversified, and for a dynamic broadcasting environment through the establishment of community radio stations.

Other press organisations operating in the country are the Foreign Correspondents' Association of Southern Africa; Printing Industries Federation of South Africa; South African Typographical Union; Specialist Press Association; South African Guild of Motoring Journalists; Professional Photographers of South Africa; Media Institute of Southern Africa; Publishers' Association of South Africa, and various press clubs in major centres.

News agencies

Local and international news agencies based in South Africa include:

- African News Agency
- Reuters
- Agence France-Presse
- Associated Press

- Deutsche Presse Agentur
- United Press International.

Media awards

Some of South Africa's media awards include the:

- Mondi Shanduka Newspaper Awards
- Vodacom Journalist of the Year Awards
- South African Breweries (SAB) Environmental Media and Environmentalist of the Year Awards
- SAB Sports Media Awards
- Sanlam Financial Journalist of the Year Award
- CNN MultiChoice African Journalist Awards
- Discovery Health Journalism Awards
- Nat Nakasa Award
- Local Media Excellence Awards
- Liberty Radio Awards
- Isu Elihle Awards
- Sikuville Journalism Awards
- South African Social Media Awards
- African Digital Media Awards
- SADC Media Awards
- New Generation (Social & Digital Media) Awards.

Marketing and advertising awards

South Africa has a vibrant and dynamic marketing and advertising industry. Some of the awards include: Loeries; Assegai Awards; Creative Circle Annual Awards; Effie Awards; FM AdFocus Awards and Marketing Achievement Awards.



Official Guide to **SOUTH AFRICA** 2021/22

ECONOMY AND FINANCE



NATIONAL TREASURY

National Treasury's legislative mandate is based on Section 216(1) of the Constitution of the Republic of South Africa of 1996, which calls for the establishment of a national treasury to ensure transparency, accountability and sound financial controls in the management of the country's public finances.

This role is further elaborated in the Public Finance Management Act of 1999. The department is mandated to:

- promote national government's fiscal policy and the coordination of macroeconomic policy;
- ensure the stability and soundness of the financial system and financial services;
- coordinate intergovernmental financial and fiscal relations;
- manage the budget preparation process; and
- enforce transparency and effective management of national revenue and expenditure, assets and liabilities, public entities, and constitutional institutions.

Over the medium term, the department planned to focus on: reviewing tax policy and strengthening regulation in the financial sector, supporting sustainable employment, supporting infrastructure development and economically integrated cities and communities, managing future spending growth and fiscal risk, managing government's assets and liabilities, making government procurement more efficient, strengthening financial management in government, and facilitating regional and international cooperation.

Reviewing tax policy and strengthening regulation in the financial sector

To improve fairness in the tax system, over the medium term, the department planned to make tax proposals part of the annual budgeting process. These proposals will be given effect through technical work such as research, the hosting of workshops and consultations with affected parties.

Once this work is completed, necessary legislative amendments will be drafted. The department's role in regulating the financial sector will continue to ensure that it is safe and provides value-added customer services. Accordingly, over the medium term, the department will focus on preparing, drafting and consulting on legislation to complete the framework for the twin peaks regulatory model.

Supporting sustainable employment

The Jobs Fund leverages the technical expertise of project partners to provide support to beneficiaries. This could be in the form of providing holistic support to small, medium and micro enterprises (SMMEs) or ensuring better results in training and the matching of unemployed youth with available jobs. By mid-2022, the fund had disbursed R5.8 billion to projects in various sectors, including agriculture and infrastructure development. Partners have contributed R11.6 billion to the fund.

Supporting infrastructure development and economically integrated cities and communities

The department will continue to facilitate conditional grants and provide financial incentives for infrastructure planning and development to municipalities through the local government financial management grant, the neighbourhood development partnership grant, the programme and project support grant, and the infrastructure skills development grant.

Managing future spending growth and fiscal risk

Over the medium term, the department planned to ensure that all government departments remain within the spending limits approved by Cabinet, provide financial analyses of government programmes, and advise on policy and service delivery trends. Future spending growth and fiscal risks in government will continue to be managed through the implementation of spending reviews.

Making government procurement more efficient

Over the medium term, the Office of the Chief Procurement Officer will continue to monitor government procurement through platforms such as the e-tender portal and the publication of data pertaining to supply chain management spending, including COVID-19 relief measures

Managing government's assets and liabilities

The department continues to finance government's gross borrowing requirement – which comprises the budget balance and maturing debt – in the domestic and international capital markets. Government's financing strategy is informed by strategic portfolio risk benchmarks for interest, inflation, currency and refinancing. It also continues to manage cash resources to ensure that government remains liquid and surplus cash is invested optimally.

Strengthening financial management in government

Government's integrated financial management system is designed to enhance the effectiveness of back-end public service functions by improving access to information, improving the quality of data, eliminating the duplication of systems and resources, and limiting the use of manual processes. The department anticipated that the template for the system's software interface would be piloted at selected national and provincial departments in 2022/23, and that rollout would commence in 2023/24.

Facilitating international and regional cooperation

South Africa's shareholding in multilateral development banks ensures that the country has direct representation in the governance structures of these institutions and amplifies the voice of developing countries and the Global South. Through its membership, the South African Government also benefits from the technical

support that these institutions provide in the implementation of government programmes, as well as the potential of accessing financing at lower than market rates.

Entities under National Treasury

National Treasury is responsible for the following entities:

- The **Development Bank of Southern Africa** is a development finance institution with the primary purpose of promoting economic development and growth. The bank also promotes human resources development and building institutional capacity by mobilising financial and other resources from the national and international private and public sectors for sustainable development projects and programmes in South Africa and regions in the rest of Southern Africa. The bank continues to support infrastructure development in municipalities aimed at addressing backlogs, and expediting the delivery of essential social services in support of sustainable living conditions and improved quality of life within communities.
- The **Land and Agricultural Development Bank of South Africa** is a development finance institution mandated to address agricultural and rural development in South Africa. The bank operates in the primary agriculture and agribusiness sectors, and is regulated by the Land and Agricultural Development Bank Act of 2002 and the PFMA of 1999. Accordingly, the bank is expected to play a pivotal role in advancing agriculture and rural development.
- The **South African Revenue Service (SARS)** is, in terms of the SARS Act of 1997, mandated to collect all revenue due to the State and administer trade to support government in meeting its key developmental objectives for growth. This involves facilitating legitimate trade, protecting South Africa's ports of entry, and eliminating illegal trade and tax evasion. As its principal contribution to South Africa's economic and social development, the revenue service's focus over the medium term will continue to be on providing government with more than 90% of the revenue it requires to meet its policy and delivery priorities. It aims to do this by modernising its information and communications technology systems to encourage eFiling, improving taxpayers' experience, monitoring compliance, and making tax collection more efficient. The revenue service's focus over the medium-term period is to achieve voluntary compliance through making taxpayers and traders aware of their tax obligations, making it reasonably easy and less costly to meet these obligations, and instituting a credible threat of detection and consequences for those who do not comply with their obligations.
- The **Accounting Standards Board** develops uniform standards of generally recognised accounting practice for all spheres of government. It also promotes transparency in and the effective management of revenue, expenditure, assets and liabilities of the entities to which the standards apply.

- The **Cooperative Banks Development Agency** provides for the registration and supervision of deposit-taking financial services cooperatives, and savings and credit cooperatives, collectively referred to as cooperative financial institutions. The agency also facilitates, promotes and funds the education and training of these institutions.
- The **Financial and Fiscal Commission** advises the relevant legislative authorities on the financial and fiscal requirements for the national, provincial and local spheres of government.
- The **Financial Intelligence Centre (FIC)**, among other things, identifies the proceeds of unlawful activities, combat money-laundering activities, combat the financing of terrorist and related activities, exchange information with law enforcement and other local and international agencies.
- The **Financial Services Board** is an independent institution established by statute to oversee the South African non-banking financial services industry in the public interest.
- The **Government Pensions Administration Agency** provides pensions administration services to the Government Employees Pension Fund (GEPF).
- The **Government Technical Advisory Centre** assists organs of state in building their capacity for efficient, effective and transparent financial management.
- The **Independent Regulatory Board for Auditors** develops and maintains auditing and ethical standards that are internationally comparable, provides an appropriate framework for the education and training of properly qualified auditors, inspects and reviews the work of registered auditors, and investigates and takes appropriate action against registered auditors who do not comply with standards and are guilty of improper conduct.
- The **Office of the Ombud for Financial Services Providers** considers and disposes of complaints against financial services providers, primarily intermediaries selling investment products.
- The **Office of the Pension Funds Adjudicator** investigates and determines complaints lodged in terms of the Pension Funds Act of 1956. The office ensures a procedurally fair, economical and expeditious resolution of complaints in terms of the Act.
- The **Public Investment Corporation** is one of the largest investment managers in Africa, managing more than R2 trillion worth of assets in a well-diversified portfolio of investment. It manages the assets of the GEPF, social security funds and other smaller funds.
- The **South African Special Risks Insurance Association** is mandated to support the insurance industry by providing cover for special risks such as riots, strikes, political unrest, terrorist attacks, civil commotion, public disorder and labour disturbances.

South African Reserve Bank (SARB)

The primary mandate of the SARB is to protect the value of the currency in the interest of balanced and sustainable economic growth. In addition to this, the SARB has a statutory mandate to enhance and protect financial stability in South Africa.

The SARB is also responsible for:

- issuing and destroying banknotes and coins;
- regulating and supervising financial institutions;
- managing the official gold and foreign reserves of the country;
- managing the national payments system;
- administering the country's remaining exchange rate control systems;
- acting as the banker to government; and
- acting as lender of last resort to provide liquidity assistance in exceptional cases.

The independence and autonomy of the SARB are entrenched in the Constitution. The SARB has the independence to use any of the monetary policy instruments at its disposal to achieve its monetary policy goal. However, the selection of a monetary policy goal is the responsibility of government.

The Governor of the SARB holds regular discussions with the Minister of Finance and meets periodically with members of the Parliamentary Portfolio and Select Committees on Finance.

In terms of Section 32 of the SARB Act of 1989, the Bank publishes a monthly statement of its assets and liabilities and submits its annual report to Parliament. The Bank is therefore ultimately accountable to Parliament.

Tax administration

National Treasury is responsible for advising the Minister of Finance on tax policy issues. As part of this role, National Treasury must design tax instruments that can optimally fulfil a revenue-raising function. These tax instruments must be aligned to the goals of government's economic and social policy.

These instruments are then administered by SARS. A single, modern framework for the common administrative provisions of various tax Acts administered by SARS, excluding Customs, was established by the Tax Administration Act of 2011, which commenced on 1 October 2012. The Act simplifies and provides greater coherence in South African tax administration law.

It eliminates duplication, removes redundant requirements, and aligns disparate requirements that previously existed in different tax Acts administered by SARS. The Act provides for common procedures across the various tax Acts, and strives for an appropriate balance between the rights and obligations of SARS and the rights and obligations of taxpayers in a transparent relationship.

The Office of the Tax Ombud is intended to provide taxpayers with an impartial and low-cost mechanism to address service, procedural or administrative difficulties that taxpayers have not been able to resolve through SARS's

complaints management channels.

South African tax system

South Africa has a residence-based income tax system. Residents are, subject to certain exclusions, taxed on their worldwide income, irrespective of where their income was earned. Non-residents are taxed on their income from a South African source, subject to relief under Double Taxation Agreements. Foreign taxes are credited against South African tax payable on foreign income.

Personal Income Tax

PIT is one of government's main sources of income. Income tax is levied on residents' worldwide income, with appropriate relief to avoid double taxation. Non-residents are taxed on their income from a South African source.

Tax is levied on taxable income that, in essence, consists of gross income less exemptions and allowable deductions. (Taxable capital gains also form part of taxable income).

Individuals generally receive most of their income as salary/wages, pension/retirement payments and investment income (interest and dividends). Some individuals may also have business income which is taxable as personal income (for example, sole proprietors and partners).

Corporate Income Tax (CIT)

CIT is a tax imposed on companies resident in South Africa, which are incorporated under the laws of, or which are effectively managed in, the country, and which derive income from within or outside the country. Non-resident companies which operate through a branch or which have a permanent establishment within South Africa are subject to tax on all income from a source within the country.

Dividends Tax (DT)

DT is a tax on shareholders (beneficial owners) when dividends are paid to them, and, under normal circumstances, is withheld from their dividend payment by a withholding agent (either the company paying the dividend or, where a regulated intermediary is involved, by the latter).

A dividend is in essence any payment by a company to a shareholder in respect of a share held in that company, excluding the return of contributed tax capital (i.e. consideration received by a company for the issue of shares). It is triggered by the payment of a dividend by any South African tax resident company or foreign company whose shares are listed on a South African Exchange.

Air Passenger Tax (APT)

In 2000 the Minister of Finance announced that an APT was to be instituted on chargeable passengers on a chargeable aircraft departing from an airport in South Africa to a destination outside the country. This is also applicable to

charter companies.

The tax is not applicable to domestic flights. It is only applicable to chargeable passengers leaving on an international flight. Operators (airline), registered agents (those acting on behalf of an operator) or charter companies will be liable for the payment of the APT to SARS monthly after reconciliation of the passenger manifests. Non carrying passenger airlines (cargo) are required to register for APT purposes but are not liable for APT payments.

Capital Gains Tax (CGT)

CGT is not a separate tax but forms part of income tax. A capital gain arises when you dispose of an asset on or after 1 October 2001 for proceeds that exceed its base cost.

The relevant legislation is contained in the Eighth Schedule to the Income Tax of 1962. Capital gains are taxed at a lower effective tax rate than ordinary income. Pre-1 October 2001 CGT capital gains and losses are not taken into account. Not all assets attract CGT and certain capital gains and losses are disregarded.

A withholding tax applies to non-resident sellers of immovable property (Section 35A). The amount withheld by the buyer serves as an advance payment towards the seller's final income tax liability.

CGT applies to individuals, trusts and companies. A resident, as defined in the Income Tax Act 58 of 1962, is liable for CGT on assets located both in and outside South Africa.

A non-resident is liable to CGT only on immovable property in South Africa or assets of a "permanent establishment" (branch) in the country. Certain indirect interests in immovable property such as shares in a property company are deemed to be immovable property. Some persons such as retirement funds are fully exempt from CGT. Public benefit organisations (PBOs) may be fully or partially exempt.

Diamond Export Levy

The Diamond Export Levy on unpolished diamonds exported from South Africa was introduced on 1 November 2008. SARS is mandated to administer and collect this levy in terms of the Diamond Export Levy Act of 2007.

All producers, dealers, beneficiators and holders of permits must pay this levy when exporting such diamonds.

The aim of the Diamond Export Levy is, among others, to promote the development of the local economy by encouraging the local diamond industry to process diamonds locally, develop skills and create employment.

Skills Development Levy (SDL)

The SDL is a levy imposed to encourage learning and development in South Africa and is determined by an employer's salary bill. The funds are to be used to develop and improve skills of employees. Employers paying annual remuneration of less than R500 000 are exempt from the payment of this levy.

The following employers are exempt from paying SDL:

- Any public service employer in the national or provincial sphere of government. (These employers must budget for an amount equal to the levies due for training and education of their employees).
- Any national or provincial public entity, if 80% or more of its expenditure is paid directly or indirectly from funds voted by Parliament. (These employers must budget for an amount equal to the due for training and education of their employees).
- Any PBO, exempt from paying Income Tax in terms of Section 10(1) (cN) of the Income Tax Act of 1962, which only carries on certain educational, welfare, humanitarian, healthcare, religion, belief or philosophy public benefit activities or only provides funds to these PBOs and to whom a letter of exemption has been issued by the Tax Exemption Unit.
- Any municipality to which a certificate of exemption is issued by the Minister of Higher Education and Training.
- Any employer whose total remuneration subject to SDL (leviable amount) paid/ due to all its employees over the next 12 month period won't exceed R500 000. If this is the reason for exemption, these types of employers are not required to register to pay SDL.

Unemployment Insurance Fund (UIF)

The UIF gives short-term relief to workers when they become unemployed or are unable to work because of maternity, adoption and parental leave or illness. It also provides relief to the dependants of a deceased contributor.

All employees, as well as their employers, are responsible for contributions to the UIF. However, an employee is excluded from contributing to the UIF if he or she is:

- employed by the employer for less than 24 hours a month;
- employed as an officer or employee in the national or provincial sphere of government;
- the President, Deputy President, a Minister, Deputy Minister, a member of the National Assembly, a permanent delegate to the National Council of Provinces, a Premier, a member of an Executive Council or a member of a provincial legislature; or
- a member of a municipal council, a traditional leader, a member of a provincial House of Traditional Leaders and a member of the Council of Traditional Leaders.

Donations tax

A donation is any gratuitous (free or at no charge) disposal of property including any gratuitous waiver or renunciation of a right. If the person (donee) receiving the donation gives anything in return, it is not a donation.

A donation takes effect when all legal formalities for a valid donation have been complied with. Donations tax is levied at a rate of 20% on the aggregated value

of property donated not exceeding R30 million, and at a rate of 25% on the value exceeding R30 million.

Donations tax applies to any person (for example: individual, company or trust) that is a resident and non-residents are not liable for donations tax. The person making the donation (donor) is liable to pay the donations tax, however if the donor fails to pay the tax within the payment period the donor and donee are jointly and severally liable

Estate Duty

When a natural person (taxpayer) dies, that person is called a ‘deceased person’ and all his or her assets on date of death will be placed in an estate. This estate is called an estate of a deceased person (commonly known as a ‘deceased estate’).

Assets in a deceased estate can amongst other things include immovable property (house), movable property (car, furniture, etc), cash in the bank, etc. The person who administers a deceased estate is called an ‘Executor’. Once the Executor has finalised all the administration in the deceased estate, the remaining assets (after paying all the debts) will be distributed to the beneficiaries.

A beneficiary can consist of either heirs and/or legatees. A legatee is a person who receives a specific asset from the deceased estate. An heir is a person who receives the balance of the estate (that is, after all disposals to a legatee are finalised).

Estate Duty is levied on the worldwide property and deemed property of a natural person who is ordinarily resident in South Africa and on South African property of non-residents. Various deductions under Section 4 of the Estate Duty Act of 1955 are allowed to determine the net value of the estate.

An abatement of R3.5 million is allowed against the net value of the estate to determine the dutiable value of the estate. The Estate Duty is levied on the dutiable value of an estate at a rate of 20% on the first R30 million and at a rate of 25% on the dutiable value of the estate above R30 million.

Securities Transfer Tax (STT)

STT is levied at the rate of 0,25% on every transfer of a security, which means any share or depository in a company or member’s interest in a close corporation, and any reallocation of securities from a member’s bank restricted stock account or a member’s unrestricted and security restricted stock account to a member’s general restricted stock account.

Transfer Duty

Transfer Duty is a tax levied on the value of any property acquired by any person by way of a transaction or in any other way. For the purpose of Transfer Duty, property means land and fixtures and includes real rights in land, rights to minerals, a share or interest in a “residential property company” or a share in a share-block company. All conveyancers are requested to register with SARS.

Value-Added Tax (VAT)

VAT is an indirect tax on the consumption of goods and services in the economy. Revenue is raised for government by requiring a business, that carries on an enterprise to register for VAT. In doing so, the business will charge VAT on supplies of goods and services made by it, on the importation of goods and on imported services (subject to certain conditions).

The business will also be entitled to deduct any VAT charged to it, or under limited circumstances from a business that is not registered for VAT, in respect of a supply made to it. VAT is therefore non-cumulative, meaning that a credit/deduction is allowed for VAT paid in previous stages, within the production and distribution chain.

The business is required to pay the difference between the VAT charged by it and the VAT charged to it, or claim a VAT refund where the VAT charged to it exceeds the VAT charged by it.

VAT is therefore, charged at each stage of the production and distribution process and it is proportional to the price charged for the goods and services.

It is compulsory for a person to register for VAT if the value of taxable supplies made or to be made, is in excess of R1 million in any consecutive 12 month period. The standard rate of VAT is 15%, and there is a limited range of goods and services which are subject to VAT at the zero rate or are exempt from VAT.

Fuel taxes

The basic fuel price is related to the costs of purchasing petroleum products from international markets, and the costs related to shipping these products to South Africa. This cost is largely influenced by the international price of crude oil and the R/\$ exchange rate.

Environmental levies

The South African Government has responded to the serious global challenge of environmental pollution and climate change by introducing several environmental taxes that are intended to modify behaviour of the country's citizens for sustainable development of the economy.

Plastic Bag Levy

The Plastic Bag Levy was introduced to reduce litter and encourage plastic bag reuse. It is charged at 25 cents per bag as from 1 April 2020.

Electricity Generation Levy

The electricity generation levy was Introduced to encourage sustainable electricity generation and use. The levy is applied to electricity generated from non-renewable sources and costs 3.5 cents per kWh.

Incandescent Bulb Levy

The electric filament lamp levy was introduced to promote energy efficiency by discouraging the use of incandescent light bulbs. It is charged at R10 a bulb from 1 April 2020.

CO2 Motor Vehicle Emissions Levy

The CO2 motor vehicle emissions levy on passenger and double- cab vehicles was introduced to encourage the manufacture and purchase of more energy efficient motor vehicles. It is charged at R120 for every gram above 95gCO₂/km for passenger vehicles and R160 for every gram above 175gCO₂/km for double cab vehicles.

Tyre Levy

The tyre levy on new pneumatic tyres was introduced to encourage efficient tyre use. Although the tyre levy is not earmarked, it indirectly supports the responsible recycling of obsolete tyres. The levy was implemented in 2017 and the current rate is R2.30/kg.

Health Promotion Levy

The Sugary Beverages Levy took effect on 1 April 2018 and the current rate is 2.21 cent/ gram of the sugar content that exceeds 4g/100 ml. The levy applies to specific sugary drinks and concentrates used in the manufacture of sugary drinks to combat obesity and promote healthier consumer beverage choices.

Diamond Export Levy

A Diamond Export Levy on unpolished diamonds exported from South Africa was introduced, effective from 1 November 2008 at a rate of 5% of the value of such diamonds.

Southern African Customs Union

SACU consists of Botswana, Lesotho, Namibia, South Africa and Eswatini. The SACU Secretariat is located in Windhoek, Namibia. SACU was established in 1910, making it the world's oldest Customs Union. Negotiations to reform the 1969 Agreement started in 1994, and a new agreement was signed in 2002.

The member states form a single customs territory in which tariffs and other barriers are eliminated on substantially all the trade between the member states for products originating in these countries; and there is a common external tariff that applies to non-members of SACU.

Excise duties

Excise duties are levied on certain locally manufactured goods and their imported equivalents. Specific excise duties are levied on tobacco and liquor products. Ad valorem excise duties are levied on products such as motor vehicles, cellular telephones, electronics and cosmetics.

Customs duties

Customs duties are imposed by the Customs and Excise Act of 1964. Ordinary customs duty is a tax levied on imported goods and is usually calculated on

the value of goods imported and collected by the customs unit within SARS. Customs duty rates in Part 1 of Schedule No. 1 and trade remedies relating to the importation of goods such as anti-dumping, countervailing and safeguard duty are set out in Schedule No. 2 of the Schedules to the Act and are determined through trade policy in terms of the International Trade Administration Act of 2002 administered by the International Trade Administration Commission.

Other taxes

Rates on property

Property-related taxes include municipal rates and charges for refuse and sewerage, which are collected by municipalities.

Payment channels

The majority of taxpayers are now using electronic payment platforms which significantly improve turnaround times. Cash collections at branches have been reduced as have the risks associated with them. From 1 May 2020, cheque payments in South Africa may not be in excess of R50 000.

Payment methods other than branch payments are:

- eFiling: this required a taxpayer to register as an eFiling client in order to make electronic payments using this channel; and
- Payments at banks: taxpayers can make either an internet banking transfer or an over the-counter deposit.

Voluntary Disclosure Programme (VDP)

A permanent VDP was introduced in terms of the Tax Administration Act of 2011, from 1 October 2012. The permanent VDP is part of a package of compliance measures aimed at encouraging non-compliant taxpayers to regularise their tax affairs.

DEPARTMENT OF PUBLIC ENTERPRISES (DPE)

The DPE undertakes shareholder oversight of state-owned companies (SOCs) in its portfolio. The department is the primary interface between government and these companies, and provides input into the formulation of policy, legislation and regulation.

In executing its responsibilities, the DPE seeks to direct and support improvements in the financial, commercial and operational performance of these companies and their contribution to the South African economy, and support transformation. To coordinate reforms in SOCs over the medium-term period, the DPE aimed to continue providing the necessary technical and advisory support to the Presidential SOCs Council in its efforts to reform, revitalise and reposition SOCs.

The DPE oversees the following seven SOCs, which are key drivers of economic growth:

- **Alexkor** – It was established in terms of the Alexkor Limited Act (1992) to mine marine and land diamonds in Alexander Bay, Northern Cape. The company holds a 51% share in the Alexkor Richtersveld Mining Company Pooling and Sharing Joint Venture. Over the medium term, the company will focus on expanding its diamond-mining operations.
- **Denel** – It was incorporated as a private company in 1992 in terms of the Companies Act of 1973, with the South African Government as its sole shareholder. It operates in the military aerospace and landward defence environment and provides strategic defence equipment. The company's broad focus over the medium term will be on restructuring, which entails optimising its cost structure and implementing its new operating business model to better position it for future sustainability.
- **Eskom** – It is mandated to generate, transmit and distribute electricity to industrial, mining, commercial, agricultural and residential customers and redistributors. Significant progress has been made on the unbundling of three subsidiaries: transmission, generation and distribution. At 64 per cent, Eskom's generation performance was poor in 2021/22, mainly due to a 27 per cent incidence of unplanned plant breakdowns. To improve maintenance at power stations and ensure the availability of power, the generation recovery plan focuses on detecting defects; reducing trips and full load losses; and accelerating the return of serviced units following long-term forced outages, partial load losses and boiler tube leaks, particularly at the Medupi and Kusile power stations. Medupi's last unit was commercialised in July 2021, and three of the six units at Kusile have been completed. As part of transitioning from coal to renewable energy technologies, in line with government's energy policy, Eskom is in the process of decommissioning old coal-fired power stations. Komati power station, which will be decommissioned in 2022, will be the first pilot site for this transition.
- **South African Forestry Company** – It was established in 1992 in terms of the Management of State Forests Act of 1992. It is mandated to ensure the sustainable management of plantation forests, increase downstream timber processing, and play a catalytic role in rural economic development and transformation. Over the medium term, the company will continue seeking viable partnerships to diversify its product offering by increasing its production of new timber products and investing in the tourism sector. Furthermore, the company plans to continue supporting communities near its operations through providing business opportunities, training and other services.
- **South African Airways (SAA)** – It operates a full-service network in the international, regional and domestic markets. The airline is responsible for promoting air links with South Africa's key business, trading and tourism markets across the world, and contributing to key domestic air linkages. The airline was

placed under business rescue in December 2019 and the approved business rescue plan was published in August 2020. To implement the plan, R10.5 billion was allocated in the 2020 second adjustments budget. The restructured airline resumed operations in September 2021, operating domestically and regionally. However, the fourth wave of the COVID-19 pandemic negatively affected its restart and ramp-up plan as some destinations closed borders to South African carriers. Because the airline was in business rescue between December 2019 and April 2021, it did not generate any revenue from scheduled flights during this period, only a few charter flights.

- **Transnet** – It provides and operates freight transportation services and infrastructure. The company's operating model is geared towards lowering the cost of logistics in South Africa, promoting a modal shift from road to rail, creating partnerships with the private sector, developing skills, and supporting demand and market access for local producers and suppliers. Through regular engagements and site visits, the department will monitor the implementation of structural reforms to ensure Transnet's economic recovery and address inefficiencies in the freight transport sector. In June 2021, the President announced the establishment of the Transnet National Ports Authority as an independent subsidiary of Transnet in line with the National Ports Act of 2005. New port equipment will be procured with the objective of reversing the negative effects of a lack of maintenance at ports over the years.

DEPARTMENT OF TRADE, INDUSTRY AND COMPETITION (the dtic)

The mandate of **the dtic** is derived from a broad legislative framework, which includes the:

- Industrial Development Corporation Act of 1940;
- Manufacturing Development Act of 1993;
- Competition Act of 1998, as amended;
- International Trade Administration Act of 2002;
- Broad-based Black Economic Empowerment Act of 2003;
- Companies Act of 2008;
- Consumer Protection Act of 2008; and
- Special Economic Zones Act of 2014.

Over the medium term, the department will continue with the development and implementation of various sectoral master plans that form a key component of the reimagined industrial strategy, which presents a multipronged approach to industrial development with emphasis on building partnerships with the private sector to secure job-creating investment. This will entail a focus on providing industrial finance, developing industrial infrastructure, and enhancing competition oversight to support the implementation of key interventions of South Africa's Economic Reconstruction and Recovery Plan (ERRP).

Providing industrial finance

In support of the ERRP, initiatives in the Industrial Financing programme are aimed at growing sustainable and competitive enterprises through the provision of direct or indirect industrial financing. Over the period ahead, the department will continue to provide financial support to the Automotive Incentive Scheme, the Black Industrialist Programme, the Agro-processing Support Scheme, the Strategic Partnership Programme and the Aquaculture Development and Enhancement Programme.

Developing industrial infrastructure

A critical part of the economic reconstruction and recovery plan includes interventions to catalyse investment through infrastructure development.

DEPARTMENT OF SMALL BUSINESS DEVELOPMENT (DSBD)

The DSBD is tasked with the responsibility of leading and coordinating an integrated approach to the promotion and development of entrepreneurship, small businesses and cooperatives; and ensuring an enabling legislative and policy environment to support their growth and sustainability. The realisation of this mandate is expected to lead to a transformed and inclusive economy driven by sustainable, innovative SMMEs and cooperatives.

Over the medium term, the department will focus on providing support to SMMEs, including by establishing infrastructure to expose SMMEs and cooperatives to new markets; providing greater access to finance for startups; finalising amendments to the National Small Enterprise Act of 1996; and developing plans for the meaningful integration of small businesses into the mainstream economy.

The department supports SMMEs primarily through its entity, the Small Enterprise Development Agency. Over the period ahead, the department planned to intensify its establishment of affordable, safe and modernised spaces where SMMEs and cooperatives can meet potential buyers. Through this exposure to new product markets, small enterprises, particularly those in townships and rural areas, which have more opportunity to test, certify and improve their products.

Access to finance, particularly for the first 3 stages of a business's life cycle (ideation, proof of concept and market entry), is crucial for sustainability. To this end, the department will continue to roll out the Township and Rural Entrepreneurship Fund with the aim of supporting 100 000 township and rural enterprises by 2024. This initiative will be implemented through the Small Enterprise Finance Agency.

In an effort to establish a Small Enterprise Ombud Service, regulate and license businesses owned by foreign nationals, regulate unfair business practices, and review the definition of SMMEs to arrive at an inclusive understanding, the department aims to finalise amendments to the National Small Enterprise Act of 1996 over the medium term. To ensure small businesses are able to access

opportunities and dedicated support measures, the DSBD planned to develop a National Small Enterprise Master Plan and contribute to the development of a Creative Industries Master Plan.

Johannesburg Stock Exchange (JSE)

The JSE is the largest exchange on the African continent and the 19th largest in the world. In keeping with international practice, the JSE regulates its members and ensures that markets operate in a transparent way, ensuring investor protection. The JSE roles include regulating applications for listing and ensuring that listed companies continue to meet their obligations.

South African Anti-Money Laundering Integrated Task Force (SAMLIT)

SAMLIT was established in 2019 by the FIC, as a public-private partnership between the banking sector and sector regulatory authorities. SAMLIT provides a platform for members to centralise information sharing, with a view to ensuring that necessary steps be taken to prevent, detect, investigate, and prosecute priority crimes in the financial sector.

SAMLIT is aimed at enhancing collaboration and coordination in combating financial crime, money laundering and terrorist financing.

Across the globe, these types of partnerships have increasingly been hailed as the best suited response to address financial crimes.



Official Guide to **SOUTH AFRICA** 2021/22

EDUCATION

Basic education

The mandate of the Department of Basic Education (DBE) is to monitor the standards of the provision, delivery and performance of education annually or at other specified intervals across South Africa, with the objective of assessing compliance with the provisions of the Constitution of the Republic of South Africa of 1996 and national education policy.

The department derives its mandate from the:

- **National Education Policy Act of 1996**, which inscribes into law the policies, legislative and monitoring responsibilities of the Minister of Basic Education, and the formal relations between national and provincial authorities.
- **South African Schools Act of 1996**, which promotes access to education, promotes quality and democratic governance in the schooling system, and makes schooling compulsory for children aged seven to 15 to ensure that all learners have access to quality education without discrimination.
- **Employment of Educators Act of 1998**, which regulates the professional, moral and ethical responsibilities of educators, and competency requirements for teachers.

Over the medium term, the department planned to focus on: improving school infrastructure; providing high-quality support materials for learners and teachers; facilitating the increase in supply of quality teachers while preparing serving teachers to teach new subjects that will prepare learners for a changing world; taking over the Early Childhood Development (ECD) function from the social development sector; and providing nutritious meals for learners through the National School Nutrition Programme (NSNP).

The department is committed to improving the physical infrastructure and environment at every public school in the basic education sector. Apart from accelerating the construction, maintenance, upgrading and rehabilitation of new and existing infrastructure, the department planned to provide schools with water and sanitation, and to replace schools constructed with inappropriate materials such as mud.

Over the medium, it planned to build 30 new schools, provide water to 50 schools and provide safe sanitation to 450 schools by the end of 2022/23.

The department aimed to ensure that all learners have access to quality support materials in languages, mathematics and life skills by printing and distributing to all public schools who request them; targeting 65 million workbooks for nine million learners in grades R to 9 each year over the medium period.

One of the ways the DBE is ensuring that young people leave the schooling system with the knowledge, skills, competencies and certification they need, is through the introduction of the General Education Certificate (GEC) in Grade 9. The GEC is being piloted in 268 schools nationally and in 2023 will be expanded to sampled schools in all the 75 districts.

Funza Lushaka Bursary Scheme

The bursary scheme aims to address critical educator shortages in specified subject areas such as mathematics, science and technology in various school phases by providing bursaries to prospective teachers.

Over the period ahead, the department planned to introduce new subjects such as coding, robotics and data analytics in primary schools, and teachers will be trained in these subjects.

National School Nutrition Programme

As part of the NSNP, a targeted nine million learners in each year over the medium term will be provided with a meal on school days. Provinces were also required to ensure that meals were provided on school days when learners were not at school because of Coronavirus Disease restrictions.

Action Plan to 2024: Towards the Realisation of Schooling 2030

The department's Action Plan to 2024: Towards the Realisation of Schooling 2030, gives expression to the Constitution of the Republic of South Africa of 1996, the National Development Plan, as well as continental and international conventions. It continues to provide the moral imperative and a mandate to government to make the social justice principles of access, redress, equity, efficiency, inclusivity and quality educational opportunities, widely available to all citizens.

Early Childhood Development

The ECD function was shifted from the Department of Social Development to the DBE on 1 April 2022. By mid-2022, the DBE was crafting and implementing innovative strategies to strengthen Foundations of Learning, looking at the continuum from birth to early grades in the foundation and intermediate phases.

A Service Delivery Model, which proposes the following five strategies for improving the quality of ECD in South Africa, has been developed:

- Curriculum-based early learning for all children from birth to five-year-olds;
- ECD programmes for all children from birth to five-year-olds;
- Training, education and development for all those working in ECD;
- Coordination of all ECD services in the country; and
- Developing a flexible funding and provisioning framework for ECD delivery.

The DBE embarked on the following critical projects:

- In collaboration with the World Bank and National Treasury, the DBE implemented a Public Expenditure and Institution Review, which determines

the funding that is being spent on ECD by the different spheres of government, and the different departments on the prioritised ECD outcomes;

- The Thrive by Five Index baseline study was conducted, with the cooperation of First National Bank, Innovation Edge, USAID and ECD Measure, to assess the quality of ECD programmes in a nationally representative sample. In years to come, the DBE will be able to monitor the quality of early learning outcomes, which is a critical input to the school education that follows; and will provide nationally representative early childhood outcomes data at three yearly intervals; and
- The National Census of Early Learning Programmes, which was conducted in 41 000 ECD programmes, in collaboration with the LEGO Foundation. The data collected from the Census will be used to map-out all early learning programmes in order to understand the full size and shape of the ECD sector; and to develop a national master list of ECD programmes, which will be incorporated into the Education Management Information System for ECD. The complete dataset will also inform planning, resourcing and support to ECD programmes.

Languages

The Incremental Introduction to African Languages Strategy, which was initiated in 2013 to strengthen the teaching of previously marginalised African languages in schools, targets 2 584 schools that are not offering African languages.

The department has since decided to expand the list of South African languages offered as Second Additional Languages (SAL) in curriculum. The additional languages are the Khoi, Nama and San languages, as well as the South African Sign Language, the latter which will soon become the country's 12th official language.

By mid-2022, the introduction of Kiswahili SAL in the curriculum was still in the pipeline.

School attendance

Nationally, almost two-thirds (64,6%) of children aged 0–4 stayed home with a parent or guardian, or with another adult, according to Statistics South Africa's General Household Survey (GHS) of 2021. This figure was most pronounced in North West (79,4%), Northern Cape (74,1%) and KwaZulu-Natal (74,0%).

Only 28,5% of children in this age group attended formal ECD facilities, nationally. Attendance of ECD facilities was most common in Western Cape (39,8%) and Free State (39,6%).

Almost one-third (31,5%) of individuals aged five years and older attended some kind of educational institution. Nationally, 87,6% of these individuals attended primary or secondary schools, while a further 5,6% attended tertiary institutions. Only 2,1% of individuals attended technical and vocational education and training (TVET) colleges.

The percentage of individuals aged five years and older and who attended school was the highest in Limpopo (92,7%) and Eastern Cape (92,4%), and lowest in Gauteng (80,2%). Attendance of higher education institutions was most common in Gauteng (9,5%), Free State (7,0%) and Western Cape (6,9%). The percentage of individuals aged 5–24 years that attended educational institutions by single ages shows very high school attendance in the age group 7–14 years, after which the attendance of educational facilities drops sharply.

By the age of 24 years, approximately 10,0% of individuals were still attending an educational facility. The figure also shows a noticeable representation of learners who were older than the ideal graduation age in primary and secondary schools.

Impact of COVID-19

The percentage of individuals aged 5–18 years who did not attend any educational institutions between 2019 and 2021 highlights the negative effect of COVID-19 on particularly young children by showing that a much higher percentage of children aged five and six years old were not attending educational institutions in 2020 and 2021 than in 2019, before COVID-19 started.

Amongst five year olds the percentage of children who did not attend any education institutions increased from 10,9% in 2019 to 37,7% in 2020, before declining to 19,4% in 2021. It is clear that the young age groups were worst affected by the closure of nursery schools and pre-school centres during this time.

The percentage of persons aged 7 to 24 who attended educational institutions increased from 73,1% in 2002 to 76,3% in 2021. Attendance increased across most provinces between 2002 and 2021, with the highest increase observed in Northern Cape (+7,8 percentage points) and Free State (+7,3 percentage points).

The main reasons provided by males and females in the age group 7–18 years for not attending any educational institutions are most commonly reported illness and disability (22,7%), poor academic performance (21,2%) and a lack of money for fees (19,5%). Although 7,8% of individuals left their studies as a result of family commitments (i.e. getting married, minding children and pregnancy), it is noticeable that females were much more likely to offer these as reasons than males (13,4% compared to 0,5%). Approximately 2,3% of individuals reported that education was useless. Males were more likely to share this sentiment than females in this instance.

Although inadequate access to money to pay for fees remains a major hurdle for learners, attendance of no-fee schools has increased notably since 2002. The percentage of learners aged 5 years and older who attended schools where no tuition fees were levied increased from 0,4% in 2002 to 65,9% in 2014, before increasing more slowly to 70,2% in 2021. Provincially, 92,8% of learners in Limpopo and 78,7% of learners in Eastern Cape attended no-fee schools, compared to 49,7% of learners in Western Cape and 56,4% in Gauteng.

Learners at school in 2021

There were approximately 15 million learners at school in 2021. The largest percentage of these learners attended schools in KwaZulu-Natal (21,5%) and Gauteng (21,3%).

Although only 5,6% of learners attended private schools, there were large variations between provinces. While 12,5% of learners in Gauteng attended private schools, only 2,4% of learners in North West and Eastern Cape attended such institutions.

More than three-quarters (77,3%) of learners who attended public schools benefitted from school feeding schemes in 2021, compared to 63,1% in 2009. Learners in Limpopo (91,9%) and Mpumalanga (89,1%) most commonly benefitted from this programme, while only 55,2% of learners in Western Cape and 61,2% of learners in Gauteng benefitted from this type of programme.

The percentage of individuals aged 20 years and older who have attained at least Grade 12 has been increasing consistently since 2002, expanding from 30,5% in 2002 to 50,5% in 2021. Over this period, the percentage of individuals with some post-school education increased from 9,2% to 14,6%. The percentage of individuals without any schooling decreased from 11,4% in 2002 to 3,2% in 2021.

Individuals without any formal education were most common in Limpopo (7,1%) and Mpumalanga (6,3%), and least common in Western Cape (0,7%) and Gauteng (1,0%). The figure shows that 21,3% of people aged 20 years or older have attained some academic qualifications that are equivalent to or less than Grade 9. Grade 9 is the final year of the senior phase and learners are allowed to leave school on its completion or when they turn 15 years old, whichever comes first. Individuals with lower secondary qualifications or less were most common in Eastern Cape (30,1%) and Northern Cape (29,6%).

Nationally, more than one-third (35,9%) of persons aged 20 years and older have attained Grade 12 while 14,6% have attained some post-school qualifications. Post-school qualifications were most common in Western Cape (20,2%) and Gauteng (19,9%) and least common in Mpumalanga and KwaZulu-Natal (both 9,7%).

Literacy levels

According to the GHS of 2021, the percentage of individuals over the age of 20 years who could be regarded as functionally illiterate (who have either received no schooling or who have not completed Grade 7 yet) has declined from 28,5% in 2002 to 10,5% in 2021. Individuals over the age of 60 years have consistently remained most likely to be functionally illiterate, followed by individuals in the age groups 40–59 and 20–39. Improved access to schooling has led to a significant decline in the percentage of functionally illiterate individuals in the 20–39 age group. Between 2002 and 2021, the prevalence of functional illiteracy in the age group 20–39 years declined noticeably for men (17,1% to 3,9%) and women

(15,8% to 2,5%). With the exception of women in the age group 20–39, women remain more likely to be functionally illiterate across all age groups.

The difference between men and women has, however, declined significantly over time. Although a higher percentage of women than men over the age of 60 years were functionally illiterate in 2021 (39,5% compared to 30,3%), the difference has declined in each successive age group, to the point that, in 2021, a smaller percentage of women in the age group 20–39 were functionally illiterate than their male peers (2,5% compared to 3,9%).

Role players

Provincial departments of basic education

The DBE shares a concurrent role with the provincial departments for basic schooling and ECD, but it is the responsibility of each provincial department to finance and manage its schools directly. District offices are the provincial departments' main interface with schools.

South African Council for Educators (SACE)

The SACE is mandated by the SACE Act of 2000 to enhance the status of the teaching profession by providing for the professional registration of all educators, promoting the continuing professional development of educators, and maintaining ethical and professional standards in the teaching profession.

Umalusi Council for Quality Assurance in General and Further Education and Training

Umalusi derives its mandate from the National Qualifications Framework (NQF) Act of 2008 and the General and Further Education and Training Quality Assurance Act of 2001. As an external and independent quality assurance body, the council's mandate is to set and maintain standards in general and further education and training through the development and management of the general and further education and training qualifications sub-framework.

Programmes and projects

Thutong portal

Through the Thutong Portal (www.thutong.doe.gov.za), the DBE aims to lead the drive to improve learning in the country through appropriate use of technology. The Thutong Portal is the online point of entry to a comprehensive array of free educational resources, policy information, and interactive services concerning all aspects of the South African schooling sector.

It provides relevant information and services about the South African school curriculum, teacher development, school administration, and management. Thutong's key focus is on creating strong and vibrant online communities of practice to facilitate discussion and sharing of information and ideas amongst

peer networks, and in an effort to encourage South African educators to develop and improve education by sharing the country's common intellectual capital.

Thutong – meaning “a place of learning” in Setswana – features a searchable database of web-based curriculum resources for various education sectors, grades and subjects.

School fees and exemption

School fees are set at annual public meetings of school governing bodies (SGBs), where parents vote on the amount to be paid. Parents who cannot afford to pay school fees can apply to the SGB for conditional, partial or full exemption from paying school fees.

Schools must not charge school fees for orphans. The right not to charge school fees is limited to the schools that have been declared no-fee schools. The names of the no-fee schools, which are determined based on the economic level of the community around the school, are published in a provincial gazette.

Higher education and training

The Department of Higher Education and Training (DHET) derives its mandate from the:

- **Higher Education Act of 1997**, which provides for a unified national system of higher education;
- **Skills Development Act of 1998**, which enables the creation of the National Skills Authority and sector education and training authorities (SETAs); the establishment of the Quality Council for Trades and Occupations (QCTO); and the regulation of apprenticeships, learnerships and other matters relating to skills development;
- **National Student Financial Aid Scheme (NSFAS) Act of 1999**, which provides for the granting of loans and bursaries to eligible students attending public higher education and training institutions, and the subsequent administration of such loans and bursaries;
- **Skills Development Levies Act of 1999**, which provides for the imposition of skills development levies;
- **Continuing Education and Training Act of 2006**, which provides for the regulation of continuing education and training, the establishment of governance structures for and the funding of public TVET colleges and community education and training (CET) colleges, the registration of private colleges, and the promotion of quality in continuing education and training
- **NQF Act of 2008**, which provides for the national qualifications framework, South African Qualifications Authority, and quality councils for the issuing and quality assurance of qualifications required by the sub-frameworks of the national qualifications framework.

Over the medium term, the department planned to continue focusing on expanding access to and enhancing performance at higher education institutions, and increasing their capacity.

Expanding access to higher education and facilitating the transition to work

By mid-2022, the department was updating the guidelines for the implementation of the bursary scheme for students from disadvantaged backgrounds. This is to strengthen funding criteria to ensure that only eligible students are funded, and thereby ensure that the scheme remains financially sustainable. The department will continue to implement plans to develop capacity at universities, eliminate the certification backlog in TVET colleges, and conduct advocacy campaigns on the use of open-access learning and teaching support materials in CET colleges.

Enhancing performance by upgrading infrastructure and increasing capacity at higher education institutions

The department planned to ensure that its institutions have appropriate infrastructure to accommodate students accessing higher education. It also planned to alleviate overcrowding and upgrade ailing infrastructure at universities, as well as enable infrastructure repairs and maintenance in priority areas such as bulk services, sanitation, teaching and learning facilities, and student accommodation.

Students enrolled at higher education institutions

According to the GHS of 2021, the total number of students enrolled at higher education institutions increased by almost 57,8% between 2002 and 2021, growing to 968 109. The percentage of black African students increased by 13,3 percentage points to 73,5% during this time, while the percentage of white students virtually halved to 14,8%.

Even though most students are black African, the education participation rate of this population group remained proportionally low in comparison with the Indian/Asian and white population groups.

The percentage of persons aged 18 to 29 that were enrolled at an institution of higher education in the country increased from 4,3% in 2002 to 6,5% in 2021. Enrolment at a higher education institution was most common among whites (24,6%) and Indian/Asians (16,2%), while only 6,2% of the coloured and 5,3% of the black African population groups were enrolled.

Institutions of higher learning

South Africa's higher education landscape comprises the following institutions:

- Cape Peninsula University of Technology
- Central University of Technology, Free State
- Durban Institute of Technology
- Mangosuthu University of Technology
- National Institute for Higher Education, Northern Cape
- National Institute for Higher Education, Mpumalanga
- Nelson Mandela Metropolitan University

- North-West University
- Rhodes University
- Sol Plaatje University, Eastern Cape
- Tshwane University of Technology
- University of Cape Town
- University of Fort Hare
- University of the Free State
- University of Johannesburg
- University of KwaZulu-Natal
- University of Limpopo
- University of Mpumalanga
- University of Pretoria
- University of South Africa
- University of Stellenbosch
- University of Venda
- University of the Western Cape
- University of the Witwatersrand
- University of Zululand
- Vaal University of Technology
- Walter Sisulu University, Eastern Cape
- Sefako Makgatho Health Sciences University.

Technical and Vocational Education and Training

The DHET is mandated to provide quality skills programmes that address the need in the labour market for intermediate skills accompanied by practical training. TVET comprises vocational, occupational and artisan education and training as offered by TVET colleges. This band of education and training is also referred to as ‘post-school’, meaning that it refers to education and training that takes place after leaving school, even if only with a Grade 9 completed.

The only age restriction for a person wishing to study at the TVET level is that the person should be 16 years or older. There are 50 registered and accredited public TVET colleges in South Africa operating on more than 264 campuses spread across the rural and urban areas of the country.

Role players

South African Qualifications Authority

The SAQA is a statutory body established in terms of the SAQA Act of 1995 and exists under the NQF Act of 2008, as amended. Its mandate and goals are to advance the objectives of the national qualifications framework, coordinate the higher education qualifications and occupational qualifications sub-frameworks, and oversee the further development and implementation of the national qualifications framework.

Council on Higher Education (CHE)

The CHE is a statutory body established in terms of the Higher Education Act of 1997, as amended. The council is mandated to advise the minister responsible for higher education on all matters pertaining to higher education; develop and manage the higher education qualifications sub-framework; and develop and implement policies and criteria to facilitate the implementation of the framework and sub-framework, and protect their integrity.

Quality Council for Trades and Occupations

The QCTO was established through the Skills Development Act of 1998. It is mandated to oversee the development and maintenance of the occupational qualifications subframework in the national qualifications framework, and advise the Minister of Higher Education, Science and Innovation on all policy matters concerning occupational standards and qualifications.

The council's quality assurance role and its management of the occupational qualifications sub-framework contribute to the post-school sector's broader imperative of providing access to education and training of the highest quality that leads to significantly improved learning outcomes.

Sector education and training authorities

The Skills Development Act of 1998 mandates SETAs to fund skills development; implement national, sector and workplace strategies to develop and improve skills in the South African workforce; and provide learnerships that lead to recognised occupational qualifications.

Over the medium term, SETAs were expected to continue to focus on providing workplace placement for unemployed graduates and internships for students; providing full bursaries to students from poor families to cover tuition, learning materials, accommodation and living allowances; and collaborating with TVET colleges to strengthen their capacity to deliver specific programmes. SETAs support artisan development through skills development centres, which aim to address skills shortages identified by occupational teams working on strategic infrastructure projects.

National Skills Authority

The NSA is a statutory body that was first established in 1999 in terms of Chapter 2 of the Skills Development Act of 1998. Its functions involves:

- policy, strategy, implementation and NSA allocations;
- liaising with SETAs about policy, strategy and sector-skills plans;
- implementing the National Skills Development Strategy;
- reviewing the accounts and balance sheet of NSA annually; and
- receiving and using information from the Skills Development Planning Unit.

National Student Financial Aid Scheme

The NSFAS was established in terms of the NSFAS Act of 1999, as amended. The scheme is responsible for:

- providing bursaries and loans to students;
- developing criteria and conditions for the granting of loans and bursaries to eligible students in consultation with the Minister of Higher Education, Science and Innovation;
- raising funds;
- recovering past loans from debtors;
- maintaining and analysing a database of funded students; undertaking research to improve the use of financial resources;
- advising the Minister on matters relating to student financial aid; and
- undertaking other functions assigned to it by the act or by the Minister.

To qualify, students must be from households with a combined annual income of less than R350 000, and less than R600 000 for students with disabilities. Bursaries cover tuition fees, prescribed study materials, meals, accommodation and transport costs.



Official Guide to **SOUTH AFRICA** 2021/22

**FORESTRY, FISHERIES AND THE
ENVIRONMENT**



Department of Forestry, Fisheries and the Environment (DFFE)

The DFFE is mandated to give effect to the right of citizens to an environment that is not harmful to their health or wellbeing, and that is protected for the benefit of current and future generations. To this end, the department provides leadership on sustainability in environmental management, conservation and protection for the benefit of South Africans and the global community.

The department's mandate is derived from legislation that includes the:

- Marine Living Resources Act of 1998, which deals with the sustainable long-term use of marine living resources;
- National Environmental Management Act of 1998, which provides for specific legislation on biodiversity and heritage resources, oceans and coasts, climate change and air quality management, and waste and chemicals management;
- National Forests Act of 1998, which promotes the sustainable management and development of forests for the benefit of all, and creates the conditions necessary to restructure forestry in state forests for protection and sustainable use;
- National Veld and Forest Fire Act of 1998, which provides for the prevention and combating of veld, forest and mountain fires across South Africa;
- National Environmental Management: Air Quality Act of 2004, which reforms the law regulating air quality to protect the environment by providing reasonable measures for preventing pollution and ecological degradation, and securing ecologically sustainable development; and provides for national norms and standards that regulate the monitoring of air quality;
- National Environmental Management Amendment Act of 2004, which streamlines the regulation and administration of environmental impact assessment processes;
- National Environmental Management: Biodiversity Act (NEMBA) of 2004, which significantly reforms the laws regulating biodiversity;
- National Environmental Management: Integrated Coastal Management Act of 2008, which promotes the conservation of the coastal environment, and ensures that development practices and the use of natural resources are sustainable;
- National Environmental Management: Waste Act of 2008, which reforms the law regulating waste management to protect health and the environment by providing reasonable measures to prevent pollution; and
- National Environmental Management: Protected Areas Amendment Act of 2009, which provides for the assignment of national parks, special parks and heritage sites in terms of the World Heritage Convention Act of 1999.

Over the medium term, the department planned to continue focusing on supporting an equitable transition to a low-carbon economy and a climate-resilient society, creating an enabling environment for South Africa's transition

to a circular economy, and creating jobs and work opportunities through public employment programmes.

Supporting an equitable transition to a low-carbon economy and a climate-resilient society

The department will prioritise the implementation of the approved low-emissions development and growth strategy over the medium term, and seek to build capacity for the Presidential Climate Change Coordination Commission secretariat. It will also spearhead the development of job resilience plans in the five sectors identified as the most vulnerable to climate change (coal, agriculture, tourism, petrol-based transport and metals).

These initiatives feed into the National Climate Change Bill, which, once promulgated, will serve as the overarching legislative framework for the implementation of climate adaptation and mitigation within provinces and municipalities, and ensure the coordination of climate change interventions across the three spheres of government.

Improved waste management towards a circular economy

Over the medium term, the DFFE aimed to focus on creating an enabling environment to support the transition to a circular economy, which entails a shift from the current – wasteful – economy to a more regenerative, inclusive and equitable one. Accordingly, the department will continue with the implementation of the recycling enterprise support programme and Operation Phakisa initiatives that contribute to job creation in the waste management sector. In addition, it will implement the national waste management strategy, which is aimed at minimising waste and diverting 40% of waste from landfills over the next five years.

In an effort to reduce plastic waste and encourage plastic recycling, over the period ahead, the levy on plastic bags is expected to be extended to all single-use plastics used for retail consumption – including plastic straws, utensils and packaging – to curb their use, encourage reuse and recycling, and divert waste from landfill. In partnership with the Council for Scientific and Industrial Research and the Department of Trade, Industry and Competition, the DFFE will work towards implementing a waste management plan for the tyre industry.

The plan includes establishing sustainable markets for recycled tyre products and developing processing capacity to support the recycling of old tyres in environmentally sustainable ways.

Creating jobs and work opportunities through the expanded public works programme

The DFFE's commitment to job creation is reflected in its medium-term targets of providing full-time jobs and work opportunities through the Expanded Public Works Programme. These jobs and work opportunities will be made available through projects and initiatives that focus on: restoring and rehabilitating

degraded ecosystems (environmental protection and infrastructure programme); expanding the conservation estate (Working for Ecosystems); protecting, restoring and rehabilitating wetlands (Working for Wetlands); protecting water resources (Working for Water); managing sustainable land use (Working for Ecosystems); sustaining production, growth and transformation in the forestry sector (Working for Forests); and addressing the challenges faced by the fisheries sector (Working for Fisheries).

National list of threatened ecosystems

In November 2022, the Ministry of Forestry, Fisheries and the Environment published the revised national list of ecosystems that are threatened and need protection. The revised list has been published in *Government Gazette* 47526 (Notice No.689) on 18 November 2022 in terms of the NEMBA of 2004.

By listing the ecosystems that are threatened or in need of protection, anyone wanting to undertake any activity will require environmental authorisation to do so. The list of ecosystems is used to support decision-making and to inform bioregional planning. The revised national list of ecosystems that are threatened or in need of protection was developed between 2016 and 2020 and incorporates the best available information on terrestrial ecosystem extent and condition, pressures and drivers of change.

A total of 120 of the 456 terrestrial ecosystem types assessed are categorised as threatened. Together these threatened ecosystem types make up approximately 10% of the remaining natural habitat in the country. Of the 120 terrestrial ecosystems 55 are critically endangered, 51 endangered and 14 have been found to be vulnerable.

According to the revised list and maps, the remaining natural extent of threatened terrestrial ecosystems has increased from 8% of the country to 10%, given ongoing habitat loss and threats from invasive species over the past 20 years.

Threatened ecosystem types can be found in all provinces, but are concentrated in the Fynbos biome of the Western Cape and Eastern Cape, KwaZulu-Natal's Indian Ocean Coastal Belt, the Albany Thicket biome of the Eastern Cape, the Highveld Grasslands, and Savanna biome. The list can be accessed on: www.dffe.gov.za/sites/default/files/gazetted_notices/nema_threatenedecosystemslist_g47526gon2747.pdf

Role players

South African National Biodiversity Institute (SANBI)

SANBI contributes to South Africa's sustainable development by facilitating access to biodiversity data, generating information and knowledge, building capacity, providing policy advice, showcasing and conserving biodiversity in its national botanical and zoological gardens. Its mandate is to monitor and report on the status of South Africa's biodiversity; all listed threatened or protected

species, ecosystems and invasive species; and the impact of any genetically modified organism released into the environment.

Over the medium term, the institute aimed to focus on providing biodiversity science and policy advice; maintaining and improving the existing national botanical gardens; and establishing two new national botanical gardens – in Kwelera (Eastern Cape) and Thohoyandou (Limpopo). The Kwelera National Botanical Garden in East London is South Africa's 10th national botanical garden and the first to be established in the Eastern Cape.

The Thohoyandou National Botanical Garden in the Vhembe Biosphere Reserve in Limpopo is South Africa's 11th national botanical garden.

South African National Parks (SANParks)

SANParks was established in terms of the National Environmental Management: Protected Areas Act of 2003. Its mandate is to conserve, protect, control and manage national parks and other defined protected areas and their biodiversity.

The entity plays a significant role in the economy, as the presence of an efficiently managed system of national parks is a key component of the national tourism economy, and acts as a catalyst for local economic development. Through the implementation of the Expanded Public Works Programme, the entity provides significant support to SMMEs, particularly in rural areas.

As a leading conservation authority, SANParks is a public entity under the jurisdiction of the DFFE, where inclusive conservation as opposed to previous policies of exclusion, are central to advancing the policies in line with the National Development Framework for Sustainable Development and the National Development Plan.

SANParks manages a system of 19 functional national parks in seven of the nine provinces of South Africa with a total area of just over four million hectares comprising 67% of the protected areas under state management. The SANParks of today is recognised as a world leader in conservation and protected area management.

The National Environmental Management: Protected Areas Act mandates SANParks to create destinations for nature-based tourism in a manner that is not harmful to the environment. As SANParks is primarily a self-funding entity generating approximately 80% of its operating budget from its ecotourism business; fulfilment of its conservation mandate is heavily reliant on a thriving and sustainable tourism operations.

The national parks are:

- Addo Elephant National Park
- Agulhas National Park
- Ai-Ais/Richtersveld Transfrontier Park
- Augrabies Falls National Park
- Bontebok National Park
- Camdeboo National Park

- Garden Route (Tsitsikamma, Knysna and Wilderness) National Park
- Golden Gate Highlands National Park
- Karoo National Park
- Kgalagadi Transfrontier Park
- Kruger National Park
- Mapungubwe National Park
- Marakele National Park
- Mokala National Park
- Mountain Zebra National Park
- Namaqua National Park
- Table Mountain National Park (which incorporates the Cape of Good Hope, Table Mountain and Silvermine nature reserves)
- Tankwa Karoo National Park
- West Coast National Park.

SANParks is the leading conservation authority in all national parks around South Africa and responsible for protected land in 19 national parks. A transfrontier conservation area (TFCA) is a cross-border region.

The conservation status of the areas within a TFCA ranges from national parks, private game reserves and communal natural-resource management areas to hunting-concession areas. TFCAs allow tourists easy movement across international boundaries into adjoining conservation areas.

The seven TFCAs are:

- Ai-Ais/Richtersveld
- Kgalagadi Transfrontier Park
- Kavango-Zambezi
- Greater Mapungubwe
- Great Limpopo Transfrontier Park
- Lubombo TFCA
- Maloti-Drakensberg Transfrontier Conservation and Development Area.

Awelani Community Conservation Area (CCA)

The Awelani CCA is a 1 800 hectare area set aside for conservation by the Mutele Community in Limpopo, including the development of tourism infrastructure.

South Africa's biosphere reserves include:

- Vhembe, situated in the north-east of Limpopo, which includes the northern part of the Kruger National Park; the Makuleke Wetland, which is protected under the Ramsar Convention; the Soutpansberg and Blouberg biodiversity hotspots; and the Makgabeng Plateau.
- The Kogelberg Reserve on the country's southern coast is in the middle of the Cape Floral Region and home to different plant species, some of which are found only in this region.

- The Cape West Coast Biosphere Reserve starts in Cape Town in the southern suburb of Diep River and stretches up the west coast as far as the Berg River, encompassing parts of the Cape Floral Region. The reserve includes the Ramsar-protected Langebaan Lagoon as well as Dassen Island, which is home to several protected bird species.
- The Cape Winelands Biosphere Reserve includes a part of the Cape Floral Region, as well as the wine-growing region.
- The Biosphere Reserve, in the Waterberg in Limpopo is an important catchment area for the Limpopo Basin, with four large rivers originating within its borders – the Lephalale, Mokolo, Matlabas and Magalakwena rivers.
- The Kruger-to-Canyons Biosphere Reserve stretches from the Kruger National Park to the Blyde River Canyon. It is an important conservation area as it covers three biomes.
- The Gouritz Cluster Biosphere Reserve is also recognised by the United Nations Educational, Scientific and Cultural Organization (UNESCO) in terms of the Man and Biosphere Programme.

Areas of conservation

Protected areas

The National Protected Areas Expansion Strategy aims to achieve the cost-effective expansion of protected areas for improved ecosystem representation, ecological sustainability and resilience to climate change and safeguarding biodiversity-based jobs. The strategy extends to freshwater and marine components and is framed to ensure that the country contributes to its international obligations on the protection of conservation estates.

South Africa is home to more than nine million ha of protected areas network, which includes national parks, nature reserves and world heritage sites. These protected areas, among other things, serve as sites for conserving the country's ecosystems, protection of high biodiversity value and provision of ecosystem services.

Most of these protected areas are geographically located in rural areas, forming an integral system with rural communities whose livelihoods and cultures are closely dependent on.

Scientific reserves

Scientific reserves are sensitive and undisturbed areas managed for research, monitoring and the maintenance of genetic sources. These include Marion Island and the Prince Edward Islands near Antarctica. Access is limited to researchers and staff.

The quality of South African and international weather forecasts relies on the availability of data inputs from the Gough Island region. Gough Island is a volcanic island rising from the South Atlantic Ocean to heights of over 900 metres above sea level with an area of 91 km².

Wilderness areas

These areas are extensive, uninhabited and underdeveloped, and access is strictly controlled with no vehicles allowed. The highest management priority is the maintenance of the intrinsic wilderness character.

Wilderness areas include the Cederberg Wilderness Area and Dassen Island in the Western Cape, and the Baviaanskloof Wilderness Area in the Eastern Cape.

Biomes

The nine major terrestrial biomes or habitat types in South Africa are divided into 70 veld types. The biomes are the Savanna, Nama-Karoo, Succulent Karoo, Grassland, Fynbos, Forest, Albany Thicket, Desert and Indian Ocean Coastal Belt. The Fynbos Biome is one of only six floral kingdoms worldwide.

World Heritage sites

South Africa has 10 World Heritage sites proclaimed by UNESCO, namely:

- **Robben Island (Western Cape).** Robben Island was used at various times between the 17th and 20th centuries as a prison, a hospital for socially unacceptable groups and a military base. Its buildings, particularly those of the late 20th century such as the maximum security prison for political prisoners, witness the triumph of democracy and freedom over oppression and racism. It is most famous for the incarceration of political prisoners, including former President Nelson Mandela, who was imprisoned for 18 of his 27 years in jail.
- **iSimangaliso Wetlands Park (KwaZulu-Natal).** It was formerly called the Greater St Lucia Wetland Park. The ongoing fluvial, marine and aeolian processes in the site have produced a variety of landforms, including coral reefs, long sandy beaches, coastal dunes, lake systems, swamps, and extensive reed and papyrus wetlands. The interplay of the park's environmental heterogeneity with major floods and coastal storms and a transitional geographic location between subtropical and tropical Africa has resulted in exceptional species diversity and ongoing speciation. The mosaic of landforms and habitat types creates breathtaking scenic vistas. The site contains critical habitats for a range of species from Africa's marine, wetland and savannah environments.
- **Cradle of Humankind (Gauteng).** The Taung Skull Fossil Site, part of the extension to the site inscribed in 1999, is the place where in 1924 the celebrated Taung Skull – a specimen of the species *Australopithecus africanus* – was found. Makapan Valley, also in the site, features in its many archaeological caves traces of human occupation and evolution dating back some 3.3 million years. The area contains essential elements that define the origin and evolution of humanity. Fossils found there have enabled the identification of several specimens of early hominids, more particularly of *Paranthropus*, dating back between 4.5 million and 2.5 million years, as well as evidence of the domestication of fire 1.8 million to one million years ago. It includes the hominid fossil sites at Swartkrans, Sterkfontein and Kromdraai.

- **Ukhahlamba-Drakensberg Park (KwaZulu-Natal).** The park has outstanding natural beauty, Africa's highest mountain range south of Kilimanjaro, and the largest and most concentrated series of rock art paintings in Africa. The site harbours endangered species such as the Cape vulture (*Gyps coprotheres*) and the bearded vulture (*Gypaetus barbatus*).
- **Mapungubwe Heritage Site (Limpopo).** Mapungubwe is an open, expansive savannah landscape at the confluence of the Limpopo and Shashe rivers. Mapungubwe developed into the largest kingdom in the sub-continent before it was abandoned in the 14th century. What survives are the almost untouched remains of the palace sites and also the entire settlement area dependent upon them, as well as two earlier capital sites, the whole presenting an unrivalled picture of the development of social and political structures over some 400 years.
- **Cape Floral Kingdom (Western Cape).** It is one of the world's great centres of terrestrial biodiversity. The extended property includes national parks, nature reserves, wilderness areas, State forests and mountain catchment areas. These elements add a significant number of endemic species associated with the Fynbos vegetation, a fine-leaved sclerophyllic shrubland adapted to both a Mediterranean climate and periodic fires, which is unique to the Cape Floral Region.
- **Richtersveld Cultural and Botanical Landscape (Northern Cape).** The 160 000 ha of dramatic mountainous desert constitutes a cultural landscape.
- **Vredefort Dome (Gauteng).** This is a representative part of a larger meteorite impact structure or astrobleme. Dating back to over two million years, it is the oldest astrobleme yet found on Earth. With a radius of 190 km, it is also the largest and the most deeply eroded. Vredefort Dome bears witness to the world's greatest known single energy release event, which had devastating global effects including, according to some scientists, major evolutionary changes. It provides critical evidence of the Earth's geological history and is crucial to understanding of the evolution of the planet. Despite the importance of impact sites to the planet's history, geological activity on the Earth's surface has led to the disappearance of evidence from most of them, and Vredefort is the only example to provide a full geological profile of an astrobleme below the crater floor.
- **ǀKhomani Cultural Landscape.** (Located at the border with Botswana and Namibia in the northern part of the country, coinciding with the Kalahari Gemsbok National). The large expanse of sand contains evidence of human occupation from the Stone Age to the present and is associated with the culture of the formerly nomadic ǀKhomani San people and the strategies that allowed them to adapt to harsh desert conditions. They developed a specific ethnobotanical knowledge, cultural practices and a worldview related to the geographical features of their environment. The ǀKhomani Cultural Landscape bears testimony to the way of life that prevailed in the region and shaped the site over thousands of years.

- **Makhonjwa Mountains, also known as the Barberton Greenstone Belt (Mpumalanga).** One of the world's oldest geological structures, the Makhonjwa Mountains in Barberton, Mpumalanga represent the best-preserved succession of volcanic and sedimentary rock dating back 3.6 to 3.25 billion years, when the first continents were starting to form on the primitive Earth. It features meteorite impact fallback breccias resulting from the impact of meteorites formed just after the Great Bombardment (over 4.6 to 3.8 billion years ago). In addition to sites inscribed on the World Heritage list, member states can maintain a list of tentative sites that they may consider for nomination. Nominations for the World Heritage list are only accepted if the site was previously listed on the tentative list.

South Africa had listed the following properties on its tentative list:

- Succulent Karoo Protected Areas
- Liberation Heritage Route
- Early Farmsteads of the Cape Winelands
- The Emergence of Modern Humans: The Pleistocene occupation sites of South Africa
- Human Rights, Liberation Struggle and Reconciliation: Nelson Mandela Legacy Sites.

Wetlands

Wetlands support a range of specialised plant, insect and mammal life and also supply food, grazing, building and craft material to people. They are able to improve water quality, reduce flood impacts, control erosion and sustain river flows.

South Africa's Ramsar sites include:

- Barberspan
- Blesbokspruit Nylsvley Nature Reserve
- De Hoop Vlei
- De Mond (Heuningnes Estuary)
- Kosi Bay
- Langebaan
- Makuleke Wetlands
- Ndumo Game Reserve
- Ntsikeni Nature Reserve
- Nylsvley Nature Reserve
- Orange River Mouth Wetland
- Prince Edward Islands in Antarctica
- Seekoeivlei
- St Lucia
- Turtle beaches and coral reefs of Tongaland
- Ukhahlamba-Drakensberg Park

- Verlorenvlei Nature Reserve
- Wilderness Lakes
- Dyer, Geyser and Dassen islands
- Kgaswane Mountain Reserve.

Marine protected areas (MPAs)

Government shares joint responsibility for South Africa's MPAs with SANParks and Ezemvelo KwaZulu-Natal Wildlife.

South Africa's MPAs include the:

- Aliwal Shoal, KwaZulu-Natal
- Betty's Bay, Western Cape
- Bird Island, Eastern Cape
- De Hoop, Western Cape
- Dwesa-Cwebe, Eastern Cape
- False Bay, Western Cape
- Goukamma, Western Cape
- Hluleka, Eastern Cape
- iSimangaliso, KwaZulu-Natal
- Langebaan Lagoon, Sixteen Mile Beach, Malgas Island, Marcus Island, Jutten Island, Western Cape
- Pondoland, Eastern Cape.
- Robberg, Western Cape
- Sardinia Bay, Eastern Cape
- Stilbaai, Western Cape
- Table Mountain, Western Cape
- Trafalgar, KwaZulu-Natal
- Tsitsikamma, Western Cape.

Zoological gardens

The National Zoological Gardens (NZG), also known as the Pretoria Zoo, is not only the largest zoo in South Africa and the only one with national status, but is also rated as one of the top zoos in the world. By mid-2022, the 85-hectare zoo housed 3 117 specimens of 209 mammal species, 1 358 specimens of 202 bird species, 3 871 specimens of 190 fish species, 388 specimens of four invertebrate species, 309 specimens of 93 reptile species, and 44 specimens of seven amphibian species.

The highly accredited tourism site, World Atlas, published an article rating the Pretoria Zoo as one of the 10 best ranked zoos in the world, competing with the well-known Bronx Zoo in New York. An Aquarium and Reptile Park also form part of the Zoo facility in Pretoria. The Aquarium is the largest inland marine aquarium in the country. The third largest collection of exotic trees can be found at the Zoo.

Some of the government and private venues include the following:

- Joburg Zoo in Johannesburg, which was founded in 1904, covers 55 ha of land and houses over 320 species of animals.
- Mitchell Park Zoo in Durban, which was named after Sir Charles Bullen Hugh Mitchell, is the country's second oldest zoo after the NZG in Pretoria.
- East London Zoo is located in the Queens Park Zoological Gardens in East London, Eastern Cape. It is financed and managed by the Buffalo City Metropolitan Municipality. Apart from the animals, the zoo and gardens contain a treasure trove of flora and fauna, some of which is only found in the Eastern Cape.
- Birds of Eden is the world's largest free flight aviary and bird sanctuary, located near Plettenberg Bay in the Western Cape, South Africa. Its unique two-hectare dome (the world's largest) spans over a gorge of indigenous forest. It is home to over 3 500 birds from over 220 species, with the main focus being African birds.
- Umgeni River Bird Park in Durban, in KwaZulu-Natal, is situated in 3.5 ha of lush tropical landscaping and houses an ever-increasing collection of more than 800 birds from 200 species.
- World of Birds is the largest bird park in Africa and one of the few large bird parks in the world. Over 3 000 birds (and small animals) of 400 different species are uniquely presented in more than 100 spacious landscaped walk through aviaries, allowing you the most intimate closeness with nature.
- The Bushbabies and Monkey Sanctuary, situated in Hartbeespoort Dam provides an environment where monkeys (primates) can be given their freedom in a natural environment. The sanctuary situated in one of the many kloofs (gorges) of the Magaliesberg mountain range provides the perfect environment for Monkeys from around the world.

Conservation centres

The NZG of South Africa is responsible for the management of the Mokopane Biodiversity Conservation Centre (MBCC), covering 1 394 ha.

The MBCC is home to an abundance of exotic and indigenous fauna such as lemur, the rare tsessebe, roan antelope and black rhino. In 2007, it was proclaimed as a protected area as a Fossil Hominid Site of South Africa: Mokopane Valley.

The Ann van Dyk Cheetah Centre, formerly known as the De Wildt Cheetah Centre, is a breeding sanctuary for cheetahs and other endangered animals situated in Hartbeespoort. Other creatures being housed at the centre include African wild dogs, brown hyenas, servals, suni antelopes, riverine rabbits and a population of vultures.

The Hoedspruit Endangered Species Centre (HESC) in Limpopo focuses on the breeding and conservation of a variety of animal species, including African wild cat, ground hornbill, sable antelope, lion, cheetah and rhino. The HESC works closely with advisory committees of the Pretoria Zoo and the University of Pretoria.

Aquariums and oceanariums

There are aquariums in Pretoria, Gqeberha (formerly Port Elizabeth), Cape Town, Durban and East London. The Aquarium and Reptile Park of the NZG of South Africa in Pretoria is the largest inland aquarium in Africa.

The Gqeberha Oceanarium's exhibits include an underwater observation area, a dolphin research centre, various smaller tanks containing 40 different species of bony fish and two larger tanks that display sharks and stingrays.

Officially opened on 2 December 1931, the East London Aquarium is the oldest public aquarium in Southern Africa. At the Two Oceans Aquarium situated at the Victoria and Alfred Waterfront, Cape Town, more than 3 000 specimens represent some 300 species of fish, invertebrates, mammals, birds and plants supported by the waters along the Cape coast. The aquarium at uShaka Marine World in Durban incorporates both fresh and seawater species.

Snake and reptile parks

The Bayworld Snake Park in Gqeberha is home to a wide variety of South African and foreign reptiles. The Aquarium and Reptile Park at the NZG in Pretoria also houses a wide variety of reptile species from all over the world. The Hartbeespoort Dam Snake and Animal Park near Pretoria features one of the finest reptile collections in southern Africa.

The Pure Venom Reptile Farm is one of the largest of South Africa's reptile parks. It is situated inland from Shelly Beach, on KwaZulu-Natal's South Coast. The Croc River Enviro Park in Nelspruit, Mpumalanga is the largest facility of its type in Africa. Khamai Reptile Centre primarily aims to conserve and breed endangered reptiles. Located outside Hoedspruit, it offers a close-up look at many local as well as exotic snakes, crocodiles and lizards.

The Croc City Crocodile and Reptile Park breeds crocodiles on a farm in Nietgedacht, Chartwell and other resident reptiles.

Private sector involvement

More than 400 organisations in South Africa concentrate on conservation, wildlife and the general environment, while more than 30 botanical and horticultural organisations concentrate on the conservation of the country's fauna and flora.

These include the:

- BirdLife South Africa
- Botanical Society of South Africa
- Centre for Rehabilitation of Wildlife
- Conservation International
- Delta Environmental Centre
- Dolphin Action Protection Group
- EcoLink
- Endangered Wildlife Trust

- Ezemvelo KZN Wildlife
- Green Trust
- Keep South Africa Beautiful
- KwaZulu-Natal Sharks Board
- National Conservancy Association of South Africa
- Peace Parks Foundation
- Southern African Foundation for the Conservation of Coastal Birds
- Trees and Food for Africa
- Wildlife and Environment Society of South Africa
- World Wildlife Fund of South Africa.

Biodiversity

South Africa is home to some 24 000 species, around 7% of the world's vertebrate species, and 5,5% of the world's known insect species (only about half of the latter have been described). In terms of the number of endemic species of mammals, birds, reptiles and amphibians found in South Africa.

Marine biodiversity is also high, with more than 11 000 species found in South African waters, which is about 15% of global species. More than 25% of these species (or 3 496 species) are endemic to South Africa, many of which are threatened, especially in river ecosystems (82%) and estuaries (77%).

Poaching

Fighting poaching, particularly rhino poaching in the Kruger National Park and abalone poaching in Western Cape, remains a top priority. Strategies to combat wildlife crime involve the technological improvement of early warning systems and risk assessments, better coordination with law-enforcement agencies, and the deployment of additional rangers.

Recycling

The Waste Management Bureau, which was established in 2016 in terms of the National Environmental Management: Waste Management Act of 2014, is tasked with promoting and facilitating the minimisation, reuse, recycling and recovery of waste by providing specialist advice and support for the development of integrated waste management plans for industry and municipalities.

The bureau is also tasked with monitoring the implementation of industry waste management plans, and managing the disbursement of revenue generated from charges for waste management. The National Regulator for Compulsory Specifications also receives funding to implement compulsory specifications for plastic bags.

Climate change

Severe weather events, a phenomena associated with global warming, are a reminder that climate change is already part of our lived reality.

The Sixth Assessment report of the Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change says that by 2030, 50% of the world's population will live in coastal areas that are exposed to floods, storms and tsunamis intensifying the vulnerability of communities living in conditions of poverty.

In the face of this reality, the importance of early warning systems and effective rapid response to disasters cannot be over emphasised.

Over the next three years, the DFFE will be investing over R100 million to upgrade and modernise weather stations to bring radar and forecasting in line with modern very short-term prediction standards.

Green economy

Through South Africa's Green Economy Strategy, the DFFE continues to promote equitable, inclusive and sustainable economic growth and social development.

The strategy has eight key pillars, namely:

- Green buildings and the built environment;
- Sustainable transport and infrastructure;
- Clean energy and energy efficiency;
- Natural resource conservation and management;
- Sustainable waste management;
- Water management;
- Sustainable consumption and production; and
- Agriculture food production and forestry.

Forestry

In terms of Forestry South Africa, which represents the forestry industry, the South African forestry landscape is a tapestry of commercial timber plantations – or tree farms – interwoven by natural spaces of unplanted land to enhance and conserve biodiversity, grasslands, wetlands and indigenous forests.

With some 80% of the country's timber plantations certified by the Forest Stewardship Council, South Africa has one of highest degree of forest certification in the world. South Africans can be proud of their Forestry Industry as one that is environmentally, socially and economically responsible.

National Arbor Week and Month

National Arbor Week, which is celebrated annually in September, serves to promote awareness for the need to plant and maintain indigenous trees throughout South Africa. The theme for the year 2022 was "Forests and sustainable production and consumption". The theme was adopted from the United Nations Collaborative Partnership on Forests and was used for the International Day of Forests commemoration this year. The 2022 theme aimed to highlight key areas of forestry and tree planting in terms of their role in creating and sustaining healthy and resilient communities, through health benefits that are derived in forests that include nutritious foods, medicine, fresh air, clean water and place for recreation.

The following four tree species were selected as trees of the year for 2022:

- Common Tree: *Dais cotinifolia* L – Pompon tree.
- Tree for Promotion: *Peltophorum africanum* – African Black wattle.
- Tree for Appreciation 1: *Aloidendron dichotomum* – Quiver tree.
- Tree for Appreciation 2: *Aloidendron pillansii* – Giant Quiver Tree.

Woodlands

Woodlands include those types ranging from wooded grasslands (between 5% and 10% tree canopy cover) to dense thickets (areas with over 75% tree canopy cover but which do not meet the other criteria required to be defined as natural forest).

The woodland, also known as savannas, constitute a forest resource of major importance in South Africa. Several protected tree species of the savanna, such as camel thorn and leadwood, contribute substantially to the lucrative braai wood market, and guidelines have been set for licensing processes to assist with the control of their use. Kathu Forest in the Northern Cape is the first woodland area to be declared protected woodland under the National Forests Act of 1998.

The woodlands are a valuable source of fuel, building material, craft timber and a variety of nontimber products. These include fruit, fodder, medicinal compounds, honey, meat and mushrooms. They form the backbone of the livelihoods of millions of people. The wood processing sector comprises board manufacturers and manufacturers of wood-based products.

Fisheries

The fishing sector remains a significant contributor to food security and the economy. Stabilising the sub-sector through the allocation of longer-term fishing rights is critical to attracting investment into the industry.

The transformation of the South African fishing industry is a constitutional and legislative imperative. The Fishing Rights Allocation Process (FRAP) and the management of commercial fishing rights are an important site for industry transformation.

The DFFE received a total of 2 473 applications for the allocation of commercial fishing rights in accordance with the FRAP 2021/22, in terms of Section 18 of the Marine Living Resources Act (MLRA) of 1998, in the following sectors:

- Hake deep sea trawl
- Hake longline
- South coast rock lobster
- Small pelagic (sardine and anchovy)
- KwaZulu-Natal crustacean trawl
- Demersal shark
- Squid
- Tuna pole-line
- Traditional linefish.

The allocation of rights in terms of the FRAP 2021/22 was finalised during

February 2022, and aggrieved parties were then entitled to submit their appeals against the decisions of the delegated authorities in relation to the FRAP 2021/22 to the Minister, in terms of Section 80 of the MLRA of 1998. The closing date for lodging appeals against FRAP 2021/22 was extended to 29 July 2022.

The department received a total of 1 213 appeals across the aforementioned nine fishing sectors, via the department's online appeal system. The department's Directorate: Appeals and Legal Review (Cape Town), is responsible for the administration and processing of the FRAP 2021/22 appeals. In addition, an Appeal Advisory Team (AAT) has been appointed through the Office of the State Attorney to advise the Forestry, Fisheries and the Environment Minister Barbara Creecy on the FRAP 2021/22 appeals.

For the sake of efficiency, expedience and to ensure a fair and proper process and outcome, the Appeals Directorate is administering these 1 213 appeals on a sector-by-sector basis, in phases, as follows: phase one of the appeal process relates to the demersal shark sector, the KwaZulu-Natal crustacean trawl sector and miscellaneous issues arising (non-compliant and late appeals); phase two of the appeal process relates to south coast rock lobster sector and in the tuna pole line sector; phase three of the appeal process relates to the traditional line fish and squid sectors; phase four relates to the Hake Deep Sea Trawl and Hake Longline sectors; and phase five of appeal process relates to the small pelagic sector (sardine and anchovy).

By 2 December 2022, Minister Creecy had completed phase 1 of the appeal process and by mid-December, was steeped in phase 2 of the appeal process. The department endeavoured to complete phase 2 of the appeal process (relating to the south coast rock lobster appeals and the tuna pole line appeals) by the end of February 2023. By mid-December, the processing and administration of appeals in phases 3 and 4 of the process had commenced.

The department was expected, on an ongoing basis, to publish progress in relation to each phase of the appeals process on its website. The entire appeal process is expected to be completed before the end of 2023.

World Fisheries Day is celebrated every year on 21st November throughout the world by fishing communities, non-government officials, fishing associations and government departments. The day helps to highlight the critical importance of fish and the lives they sustain, both in and out of water.

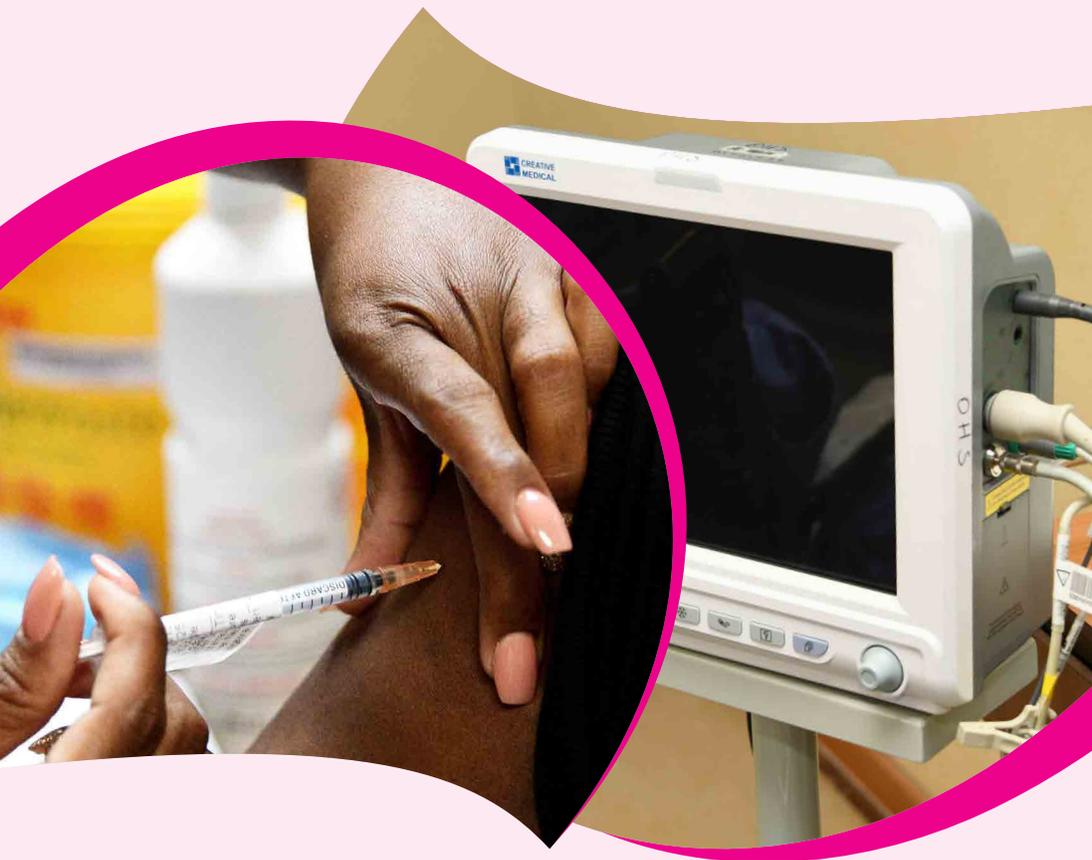
Aquaculture

South Africa is a maritime nation with jurisdiction over one of the largest exclusive economic zones in the world. Its oceans represent a significant asset for current and future generations, with enormous economic potential, in aquaculture, bioprospecting, marine ecotourism, extractive industries, and less obvious benefits of healthy ecosystem services such as climate regulation, carbon storage and waste absorption.

The growing ocean economy had by mid-2021 contributed R41 billion to South

Africa's gross domestic product, creating jobs in six focus areas including marine transport and manufacturing, offshore oil and gas exploration, aquaculture; small harbours development, coastal and marine tourism, marine protection services and ocean governance.

By mid-2021, consultations on the Aquaculture Development Bill were being finalised to be tabled in Parliament. The National Freshwater (inland) Wild Capture Fisheries Policy was also developed. The Oceans Economy Programme includes a specific focus on marine protection and ocean governance while the Marine Spatial Planning Act of 2018 provides for the development and implementation of a shared marine spatial planning system to facilitate responsible use of the oceans, and to conserve the oceans for present and future generations.



Official Guide to **SOUTH AFRICA** 2021/22

HEALTH

Department of Health (DoH)

The DoH derives its mandate from the National Health Act of 2003, which requires that the department provides a framework for a structured and uniform health system for South Africa and sets out the responsibilities of the three levels of government in the provision of health services.

Its mission is to improve health by preventing illness and disease and promoting healthy lifestyles. It aims to consistently improve the healthcare delivery system by focusing on access, equity, efficiency, quality and sustainability.

Over the medium term, the department aimed to focus on reducing morbidity and mortality resulting from the Coronavirus Disease (COVID-19) pandemic, including rolling out government's vaccination strategy and responding to future waves of infection.

Ongoing focus areas include implementing National Health Insurance (NHI), preventing and treating communicable and non-communicable diseases, investing in health infrastructure, supporting tertiary healthcare services in provinces, and developing the health workforce.

Responding to the COVID-19 pandemic

South Africa has experienced four waves of COVID-19 infections, placing significant pressure on the country's health system and its budgets. To protect South Africans against the virus, the department aimed to have vaccinated 70% of the adult population by March 2023.

By mid-2022, the DoH had administered 35, 182 million vaccine doses to just over 19,717 million adult individuals, which was 49,5% of all adults. The department was allocated R2 billion for vaccines in the 2022/23 financial year.

The ongoing monitoring of SARS-CoV-2 genomic data is managed by the Network for Genomic Surveillance in South Africa. This includes monitoring for emergence of new variants and lineages, including from tested patients and wastewater.

Phased implementation of the NHI

The DoH planned to fund initiatives to strengthen the health system, such as the dispensing and distribution of chronic medicines, the improvement of patient information systems, and the electronic management of medicine stocks.

Preventing and treating communicable and non-communicable diseases

The department funds government's antiretroviral treatment programme, which aims to reach 6.7 million people by 2024/25, as well as HIV-prevention and tuberculosis (TB) prevention and treatment services.

Investing in health infrastructure

The department planned to accelerate the construction, maintenance, upgrading and rehabilitation of new and existing health system infrastructure, as well as

provide medical equipment required to render health services. Over the medium term, the department aimed to construct or revitalise 92 health facilities through the indirect grant and conduct major maintenance work or refurbishment on a further 200 facilities.

Improvement of quality of service at public health facilities will be a major focus in the 2022/23 financial year.

Already 21 quality learning centres had been established in the country with 102 hospitals, including private ones, 90 primary healthcare and 25 emergency medical services participating in the programme. Good quality health infrastructure, including its maintenance is key towards achieving a good quality public health service.

Supporting tertiary healthcare services

Tertiary healthcare services are highly specialised referral services provided at central and tertiary hospitals. However, due to their specialised nature, by mid-2022 there are only 31 of these hospitals in the country and most of them were in urban areas.

This unequal distribution results in patients often being referred from one province to another, which requires strong national coordination and cross-subsidisation to compensate provinces for providing tertiary services to patients from elsewhere.

Developing the health workforce

To ensure that all eligible students can complete their training through medical internships and subsequently.

Use of health facilities

Nationally, 71,9% of households said that they would first go to public clinics, hospitals or other public institutions, while 27,0% of households said that they would first consult a private doctor, private clinic or hospital, according to Statistics South Africa's General Household Survey (GHS) of 2021.

The use of public health facilities was least common in Western Cape (52,1%), Gauteng (64,2%), and most common in Limpopo (85,4%), Mpumalanga (84,8%) and Eastern Cape (82,1%). About 77,7% of white individuals were members of a medical aid scheme compared to 45,1% of Indian/Asian individuals, 19,9% of coloureds and 9,3% of black Africans.

Medical aid coverage

Despite some minor fluctuations over the period, the percentage of individuals who were covered by a medical aid scheme changed very little between 2002 and 2022, increasing only slightly from 15,9% to 16,1%. It is, however, notable that the number of individuals who were covered by a medical aid scheme increased from 7,3 million to just over 9,7 million persons during this period.

Medical aid coverage was most common in Gauteng (24,0%) and Western

Cape (23,7%), and least common in Limpopo (8,2%) and Mpumalanga (9,1%).

Teenage pregnancy

About 2,7% of females in the age group 14–19 years were at different stages of pregnancy during the 12 months before the survey. The prevalence of pregnancy increased with age, rising from 1,7% for females aged 15 years, to 6,8% for females aged 19 years.

Disability

About 4,5% of South Africans aged five years and older were classified as disabled in 2021. A larger percentage of women (4,9%) than men (4,1%) were classified as disabled. Disability was most common in Northern Cape (7,1%) and least common in Gauteng (3,1%).

Health Patient Registration System (HPRS)

The HPRS, which provides a Patient Registry and Master Patient Index using the South African identification number and other forms of legal identification, has been registering some remarkable progress.

By mid-2022, the HPRS had registered more than 57 million South Africans in 3 111 health facilities. Further work has been done towards the establishment of the single, portable patient record system with interoperable digital system.

Life expectancy and population

Life expectancy at birth for 2022 was estimated at 60,0 years for males and 65,6 years for females, according to Statistics South Africa's Mid-year population estimates of 2022. The infant mortality rate for 2022 was estimated at 24,3 per 1 000 live births.

The estimated overall HIV prevalence rate is approximately 13,9% among the South African population. The total number of people living with HIV is estimated at approximately 8,45 million in 2022. For adults aged 15–49 years, an estimated 19,6% of the population is HIV positive.

There is a reduction in international migration, which is indicative of the COVID-19 travel restrictions and subsequent impact on migratory patterns since March 2020. Migration is an important demographic process, as it shapes the age structure and distribution of the provincial population (and so the country's population structure). For the period 2021–2026, Gauteng and Western Cape are estimated to experience the largest inflow of migrants of approximately, 1 443 978 and 460 489 respectively.

Gauteng still comprises the largest share of the South African population, with approximately 16,10 million people (26,6%) living in this province. KwaZulu-Natal is the province with the second largest population, with an estimated 11,54 million people (19,0%) living in this province. With a population of approximately 1,31 million people (2,2%), Northern Cape remains the province with the smallest

share of the South African population.

About 28,07% of the population is aged younger than 15 years (17,01 million) and approximately 9,2% (5,59 million) is 60 years or older. The provinces reflecting the highest percentage of children younger than 15 within its structure are Limpopo (33,6%) and Eastern Cape (32,7%).

The proportion of elderly persons aged 60 years and older in South Africa is increasing over time and as such policies and programmes to care for the needs of this growing population should be prioritised.

National Health Insurance

The NHI aims to ensure that all citizens and residents of South Africa, irrespective of socio economic status, have access to good-quality health services provided by both the public and private sectors, thereby eradicating financial barriers to healthcare access. The NDP envisions a health system that works for everyone, produces positive health outcomes and is accessible to all.

By 2030, the NDP expects South Africa to have, among other things, raised the life expectancy of South Africans to at least 70 years; produced a generation of under-20s that is largely free of HIV; achieved an IMR of less than 20 deaths per thousand live births, including an U5MR of less than 30 per thousand; achieved a significant shift in equity, efficiency and quality of health service provision.

Potential benefits from the NHI Fund would include:

- treatment for schoolchildren with physical barriers to learning such as eyesight, hearing, speech and oral health;
- free ante-natal care in the form of eight visits to a doctor to each of the 1,2 million women who fall pregnant annually. Family planning, breast and cervical cancer screening and where appropriate, treatment, will be provided;
- better services for mental health users, such as screening;
- assistive devices for the elderly like spectacles, hearing aids and wheelchairs.

Medical schemes

By August 2022, there were over 80 medical schemes in South Africa, with over eight million beneficiaries.

Health entities:

- The **National Health Laboratory Service (NHLS)** was established in terms of the National Health Laboratory Service Act of 2000. The entity operates more than 230 laboratories in nine provinces and is the sole provider of training for pathologists and medical scientists, provides comprehensive and affordable pathology services to more than 80% of the South African population, and plays a significant role in the diagnosis and monitoring of HIV and TB.
- The NHLS also houses the National Institute for Communicable Diseases, which is internationally renowned for its role in the surveillance and monitoring

of communicable diseases. It provides expertise to southern African countries on outbreaks such as Ebola, listeriosis and, most recently, COVID-19.

- The **South African Medical Research Council (SAMRC)** conducts and funds health research and medical innovation in terms of the amended SAMRC Act of 1991. The council is mandated to contribute to improved health and quality of life for the South African population by providing evidence-based recommendations to various policy-makers through health research, development, technology transfer and capacity development.
- The **Compensation Commissioner for Occupational Diseases in Mines and Works** was established in terms of the Occupational Diseases in Mines and Works Act of 1973. The act gives the commissioner the mandate to collect levies from controlled mines and works; compensate workers, former workers and the dependants of deceased workers in controlled mines and works that have developed occupational diseases in their cardiorespiratory organs; and reimburse workers for any loss of earnings while being treated for TB.
- The **Council for Medical Schemes** is a regulatory authority designated in terms of the Medical Schemes Act of 1998 to oversee the medical schemes industry. The Act sets out the functions of the council, which include protecting the interests of beneficiaries, controlling and coordinating the functions of medical schemes, collecting and distributing information about private healthcare, and advising the Minister of Health on matters concerning medical schemes.
- The **Office of Health Standards Compliance** was established in terms of the National Health Amendment Act of 2013 to protect and promote the health and safety of users of health services by ensuring that private and public health facilities comply with prescribed norms and standards. This includes inspecting health facilities for compliance with norms and standards, investigating complaints made by the public, and initiating enforcement actions against facilities where there is persistent non-compliance.
- The **South African Health Products Regulatory Authority** derives its mandate from the National Health Act of 2003 and the Medicines and Related Substances Act of 1965. The authority is responsible for regulating medicines intended for human and animal use; licensing manufacturers, wholesalers and distributors of medicines, medical devices, radiation-emitting devices and radioactive nuclides; and conducting trials.



Official Guide to **SOUTH AFRICA** 2021/22

HUMAN SETTLEMENTS



Human Settlements

The Department of Human Settlements (DHS) is mandated, in terms of Section 26 of the Constitution of the Republic of South Africa of 1996 and Section 3 of the Housing Act of 1997, to establish and facilitate a sustainable national housing development process in collaboration with provinces and municipalities.

In fulfilling its mandate, the department determines national policy and norms and standards for the development of housing and human settlements, prescribes national housing delivery goals and oversees provincial and municipal performance outcomes against national targets.

To further ensure an effective housing development process, the department funds, capacitates and supports provinces and municipalities in the implementation of human settlements projects.

The department's focus over the medium term will be on creating integrated and transformed human settlements, upgrading informal settlements, and providing affordable housing. To facilitate the pursuit of these focus areas and ensure its human settlements programmes are sustainable, the department will seek to fast-track its policy and programme review of the *1994 White Paper on Housing*, the national housing code and the Housing Act of 1997.

Integrated human settlements

The department planned to finalise 25 integrated plans over the medium term to guide the implementation of housing projects within the 94 nationally declared priority development areas. Over the medium period, the department aimed to deliver 180 000 subsidy housing units and issue 388 104 title deeds to beneficiaries from low-income households.

These projects will deliver a range of housing options and create inclusive communities within an improved spatial landscape to undo the legacies of race-based spatial planning.

Informal settlements upgrading

By mid-2022, there were over 2 700 informal settlements in South Africa, a majority of which are located in unsuitable land that is prone to housing emergencies. The DHS's national upgrading support programme assists provinces and municipalities with comprehensive planning for the upgrading of informal settlements.

Upgrading entails a systematic improvement to living conditions through secure tenure, safe and reliable water and sanitation and adequate access to social services. A large part of this involves active community participation to enable meaningful engagement.

Through the programme, assistance will be provided to an estimated 900 informal settlements over the medium-term period, and 180 000 stands will be upgraded to have access to municipal services.

Affordable housing

Affordable housing broadly comprises rental and social housing programmes and affordable housing finance instruments. The department's planned review and update of social housing policy over the medium term is aimed at increasing the supply of rental and social housing stock. To this end, the department aimed to deliver 25 000 affordable rental units in strategically located areas and 3 000 community residential units over the medium-term period.

The department will continue to assist low and middle-income households that earn above the qualifying threshold to receive state-subsidised housing but below the qualifying threshold to secure a home loan. To address this unserved market, a targeted 12 000 finance-linked individual subsidies will be disbursed through the National Housing Finance Corporation in the form of lump-sum deposits that lower monthly mortgage repayments for qualifying beneficiaries.

Shelter satisfies a basic human need for physical security and comfort and the characteristics of the dwellings in which households live provide an important indication of the well-being of household members.

According to Statistics South Africa's General Household Survey of 2021, slightly more than eight-tenths (83,6%) of South African households lived in formal dwellings in 2021, followed by 11,7% in informal dwellings, and 4,2% in traditional dwellings. Households that lived in formal dwellings were most common in Limpopo (96,3%) and Mpumalanga (89,8%).

Approximately one-fifth of households in Gauteng (17,0%) and Western Cape (17,3%) lived in informal dwellings. Traditional dwellings were most common in Eastern Cape (21,6%) and KwaZulu-Natal (9,3%).

About 83,4% of households in metropolitan areas lived in formal dwellings while 15,0% lived in informal dwellings. Informal dwellings were most common in Buffalo City (19,3%), Johannesburg (17,3%) and Cape Town (16,6%), and least common in Nelson Mandela Bay (5,6%).

Households that lived in rented dwellings were most common in Gauteng (30,6%) and Western Cape (23,9%) and least common in Mpumalanga (7,5%), Limpopo (8,4%) and Eastern Cape (8,5%). By comparison, the largest percentage of households that lived in dwellings that were either paid off or being occupied rent-free were found in Limpopo (89,5%) and Mpumalanga (89,6%) while the smallest percentages were observed in Gauteng (57,2%) and Western Cape (59,5%).

Title deeds

TheDHS has partnered with the Banking Association of South Africa to fast-track the delivery of title deeds to housing beneficiaries. This will be done by utilising the Youth Employment Services programme.

Housing entities

The DHS's housing entities include the:

- **National Housing Finance Corporation (NHFC)**, which was established as a development finance institution in 1996 and is mandated to provide access to affordable housing finance for low-income and middle-income households by leveraging private sector funding to finance housing developments and create affordable housing stock. In the affordable housing sector, the NHFC plays a multiple role as an innovator, financier and facilitator by ensuring viable housing finance solutions; sustainable human settlement growth and engagement of relevant partnerships.

The NHFC has been tasked to administer, and facilitate delivery and access to the Finance-Linked Individual Subsidy Programme (FLISP), now called Help-Me-Buy-A-Home, which provides poor and low to middle-income households with access to adequate housing. Qualifying households for this subsidy are those that in the gap market; those that do not qualify for a fully subsidised house and at the same time they do not qualify for mortgage loan from the banks.

In the 2022/23 financial year, the revised bands for the FLISP now called Help-Me-Buy-A-Home will come into effect. With effect from 1 April 2022, the applicable subsidy quantum have been revised from what existed in 2018, by 20.9%, to ensure that they remain consistent with the ability of the DHS, through its implementing agents, to continue and improve delivery. To qualify for social housing, the revised income bands from households earning an income between are R1 500 to R15 000 to R1 850 to R22 000 gross monthly income.

In an effort to facilitate access to ownership among government employees by utilising Help Me Buy a Home Subsidy, the NHFC has signed a memorandum of understanding with Government Employees Housing Scheme.

- **National Home Builders Registration Council (NHBRC)**, which was established in terms of the Housing Consumers Protection Measures Act of 1998 and is mandated to represent the interests of housing consumers by providing warranty protection against defined defects in new homes, and to regulate the home-building industry. It also provides training and capacity building to promote and ensure compliance with technical standards for building homes.

The NHBRC has reviewed its Investment Strategy and has included as one of its investment portfolios in the NHBRC's Warranty Fund, a "Housing Development Investment Fund". The objective of the fund is to invest in

projects that facilitate access to affordable housing and finance thereof for the low-to-middle income South African households.

- **Property Practitioners Regulatory Authority** (formerly Estate Agency Affairs Board), is primarily mandated to, among others, regulate the affairs of all property practitioners; allowing for transformation in the property sector and to ensure consumer protection against undesirable practices and conduct of property practitioners. The Property Practitioners Act of 2019 aims to provide, among others, for the regulation of property practitioners; transformation of the property practitioners sector; to provide for compliance with and enforcement of the provisions of the Act; and consumer protection.
- **Housing Development Agency** (HDA), which was established in terms of the HDA Act of 2008 and is mandated to identify, acquire, hold, develop and release state-owned and privately owned land for residential and community purposes; and manage housing development projects for the creation of sustainable human settlements. The agency also provides provinces and municipalities with project, technical and land geospatial services related to housing developments.

The HDA has implemented a dashboard that tracks the implementation of transformation and empowerment in all HDA programmes. The dashboard tracks how much is spent on businesses owned by women, youth, persons with disabilities and military veterans, as percentage of the annual total procurement spend.

- **Social Housing Regulatory Authority** (SHRA), which was established in terms of the Social Housing Act of 2008 and is mandated to regulate the social housing sector, and subsidise affordable rental housing units for low-income to middle-income households. The SHRA aims to achieve 30 000 housing units by the end of 2024.



Official Guide to **SOUTH AFRICA** 2021/22

INTERNATIONAL RELATIONS



INTERNATIONAL RELATIONS

South Africa continues to conduct its foreign relations in accordance with the values and principles set out in the Constitution of the Republic of South Africa of 1996, which states that the President is ultimately responsible for the foreign policy and international relations of South Africa. It is the President's prerogative to appoint heads of mission, to receive foreign heads of mission, to conduct state-to-state relations, and to negotiate and sign all international agreements.

The Minister of International Relations and Cooperation is entrusted with the formulation, promotion, execution and daily conduct of South Africa's foreign policy, but, according to the Constitution, it is the president who is ultimately responsible for South Africa's foreign policy and international relations. It is the president's prerogative to appoint heads of mission, receive foreign heads of mission, conduct interstate relations, and negotiate and sign all international agreements. All international agreements must be tabled in Parliament.

Agreements that are not of a technical, administrative, or executive nature bind South Africa only after being approved by Parliament, which also approves the country's ratification of or accession to multilateral agreements.

The Department of International Relations and Cooperation's (DIRCO) overall mandate is to work for the realisation of South Africa's foreign policy objectives. This is done by:

- coordinating and aligning South Africa's international relations;
- monitoring international developments;
- communicating government's policy positions;
- developing and advising government on policy options to create mechanisms and avenues for achieving objectives;
- protecting South Africa's sovereignty and territorial integrity;
- contributing to the creation of an enabling international environment for South African businesses;
- sourcing developmental assistance; and
- assisting South African citizens abroad.

Over the medium term, the department planned to continue focusing on advancing the African Agenda, including curbing the impact of the Coronavirus Disease (COVID-19) pandemic on the continent; participating actively in the United Nations (UN); and enhancing the management of its infrastructure portfolio in foreign missions. The DIRCO strives to be a positive contributor to the global family of nations and to promote the aspirations for a peaceful, prosperous and united Africa in a just and equitable world. These are difficult goals to pursue, challenged by complex shifts in global relations and unprecedented global instability.

Advancing the African Agenda

South Africa's foreign policy focuses on building unity, inclusive economic development and shared prosperity for the African continent and its people.

Accordingly, the department will continue to play an active role in the structures and processes of the African Union (AU) to advance peace and security, and prevent conflict in Africa.

South Africa continues to be at the forefront of efforts to strengthen and capacitate the AU to address challenges more effectively such as the COVID-19 pandemic, and harness the opportunities presented to Africa in a constantly shifting geopolitical landscape. South Africa's position at the Group of Twenty (G20) enables it to continue advocating for debt relief and developmental assistance for Africa.

The appointment of President Cyril Ramaphosa by the Director-General of the World Health Organisation as co-chair of the Access to COVID-19 Tools Accelerator had elevated South Africa's role in seeking equal access to COVID-19 vaccines for all African countries. The DIRCO's role is to encourage embassies to promote the President's work as co-chair.

In addition, as part of responding to the pandemic, the COVID-19 Response Fund was established by the AU to raise additional funds for the African Centres for Disease Control, and lobby for a comprehensive and robust economic stimulus package for Africa to mitigate the negative economic impact of the pandemic.

Active participation in the UN

With its near-universal membership and vast agenda, the UN remains the most influential multilateral institution and global governance centre. Accordingly, over the medium term, South Africa will continue its engagements with the UN to advance the country's foreign policy priorities in matters such as climate change, sustainable development, human rights law, terrorism, international criminal law, gender equity, economic relations and the peaceful settlement of disputes.

Managing infrastructure projects and properties

The department's international property portfolio comprises of 127 state-owned properties and more than 1 000 rented properties. Over the medium-term period, it plans to reduce its rental portfolio and the associated operational costs by developing one property in Luanda, Angola, and one property in Gaborone, Botswana, on state-owned vacant land. It also plans to assess the condition of the state-owned properties within its portfolio over the medium term, beginning with those in Africa, to determine the need for maintenance, repairs and renovations to extend their lifespans.

International relations

The DIRCO aims to strengthen political, economic and social relations through structured bilateral agreements and high-level engagements to advance South Africa's national priorities, the African Agenda and South-South cooperation on an ongoing basis.

- **Africa** embraces relevant national priorities by strengthening bilateral cooperation with individual countries in Africa, particularly through focusing on increasing exports of South African goods and services, foreign direct investment with technology transfers into value-added industries and mineral beneficiation, and inbound tourism and skills enhancement. South Africa has representation in 47 diplomatic missions in Africa.
- **Asia and Middle East** embraces relevant national priorities by strengthening bilateral cooperation with individual countries in Asia and the Middle East, particularly through focusing on increasing exports of South African goods and services, foreign direct investment with technology transfers into value-added industries and mineral beneficiation, and inbound tourism and skills enhancement. South Africa has representation in 30 diplomatic missions in Asia and the Middle East.
- **Americas and Caribbean** embraces relevant national priorities by strengthening bilateral cooperation with individual countries in the Americas and the Caribbean, particularly through focusing on increasing exports of South African goods and services, foreign direct investment with technology transfers into value-added industries and mineral beneficiation, and inbound tourism and skills enhancement. South Africa has representation in 13 diplomatic missions in the Americas and the Caribbean.
- **Europe** embraces relevant national priorities by strengthening bilateral cooperation with individual countries in Europe, particularly through focusing on increasing exports of South African goods and services, foreign direct investment with technology transfers into value-added industries and mineral beneficiation, and inbound tourism and skills enhancement. South Africa has representation in 23 diplomatic missions in Europe.

African Renaissance and International Cooperation Fund

The African Renaissance and International Cooperation Fund was established in terms of the African Renaissance and International Cooperation Fund Act of 2000 to enhance cooperation between South Africa and other countries, particularly those in Africa, through the promotion of democracy and good governance, the prevention and resolution of conflict, socioeconomic development and integration, the provision of humanitarian assistance, and the development of human resources.

Over the medium-term period, the fund aimed to focus on promoting democracy and good governance, particularly in Africa; providing training to ensure the transfer of knowledge and practical skills in African countries; and supporting projects that enhance African trade, economic development and integration. All of the fund's expenditure goes towards transfers and subsidies to projects aligned with these areas of focus.

African Union

The AU is a continental body consisting of the 55 member states that make up the countries of the African Continent. It was officially launched in Durban in 2002 as a successor to the Organisation of African Unity (OAU). Africa Day is celebrated annually on 25 May within the African continent to mark the formation of the OAU on 25 May 1963 and the AU in 2002, as well as chart the progress made by the continent since then to advance democracy, peace, stability and socio-economic development.

The day is an opportunity to promote African unity, deepen regional integration and recommit Africa to a common destiny. South Africa marked Africa Month 2021 under the theme: “Year for Arts, Culture and Heritage in the Year of Charlotte Maxeke”. The 2021 Africa Month programme, among other objectives, sought to promote regional integration by strengthening people-to-people contact and harmonise policies, and share skills and expertise.

International bodies

Brazil, Russia, India, China and South Africa

BRICS is an association of five major emerging countries, which together represent about 42% of the global population, 23% of the Gross Domestic Product (GDP), 30% of the territory and 18% of the global trade.

South Africa’s membership of BRICS enables the country to employ additional and powerful tools in its fight to address the triple challenge of unemployment, poverty and inequality through increased trade, investment, tourism, capacity building, skills and technology transfers.

India, Brazil and South Africa (IBSA)

The IBSA Dialogue Forum brings together three large pluralistic, multicultural and multiracial societies from three continents as a purely South-South grouping of like-minded countries committed to inclusive sustainable development, in pursuit of the well-being of their peoples and those of the developing world. The principles, norms and values underpinning the IBSA Dialogue Forum are participatory democracy, respect for human rights, the rule of law and the strengthening of multilateralism.

The realisation of the trilateral alliance between IBSA stems from three commonalities between the three countries, namely: all three countries are vibrant democracies, they share common views on various global issues and are substantial emerging economies within their sub-regions.

UN General Assembly (UNGA)

Established in 1945 under the Charter of the UN, the UNGA occupies a central position as the chief deliberative, policymaking and representative organ of the UN. Comprised of all 193 members of the UN, it provides a unique forum for multilateral discussion of the full spectrum of international issues covered by the

Charter. It also plays a significant role in the process of standard-setting and the codification of international law. The UNGA meets from September to December each year.

UN Security Council (UNSC)

The UNSC has primary responsibility for the maintenance of international peace and security. It has 15 members, and each member has one vote. Under the Charter of the UN, all member states are obligated to comply with UNSC decisions.

The UNSC takes the lead in determining the existence of a threat to the peace or act of aggression. It calls upon the parties to a dispute to settle it by peaceful means and recommends methods of adjustment or terms of settlement. In some cases, the UNSC can resort to imposing sanctions or even authorise the use of force to maintain or restore international peace and security. The year 2021 was the third year as a non-permanent member of the UNSC.

Commonwealth

The Commonwealth is a voluntary association of 53 independent member countries. Membership is diverse and includes both developed and developing countries in Africa, Asia, the Americas, the Caribbean, Europe and the South Pacific. Since rejoining the Commonwealth in 1994, South Africa has interacted closely with the work of the Commonwealth contributing politically, financially and in terms of capacity and expertise to the work of the organisation.

Non-Aligned Movement

The NAM, consisting of 120 members, is the largest political grouping of countries outside the UN, making it an important lobby group of developing countries in global affairs. South Africa formally joined the movement in 1994 and has played a leading role in NAM deliberations and meetings ever since.

Group of Twenty

South Africa has been a permanent member of the G20 since its inception in 1999 following the Asian financial crises. The G20 was established to increase multilateral cooperation for the recovery of the global economy, to bring stability to the global financial system, to promote long-term sustainable growth and to strengthen global economic governance.

The G20 economies account for 85% of the global GDP, 80% of world trade and two-thirds of the world's population. South Africa also works together closely with the following international bodies and organisations to ensure that it benefits from trade, investment, industrialisation and innovation to address the triple challenges of poverty, inequality and unemployment, as espoused in the National Development Plan:

- World Trade Organisation.

- World Economic Forum.
- Organisation for Economic Cooperation and Development.
- International Labour Organisation.
- World Intellectual Property Organisation.

World Health Organisation (WHO)

South Africa is one of the 194 member states that constitute the WHO. The country takes part in the annual World Health Assembly (WHA), which is the WHO's supreme decision-making body. South Africa also participates in the WHO's annual Regional Committee for Africa, which reflects on the decisions taken at the WHA, particularly those relevant to the continent.

New Development Bank (NDB)

The NDB was established in 2014 to strengthen cooperation among the BRICS group of countries, and complements the efforts of multilateral and regional financial institutions for global development.



Official Guide to **SOUTH AFRICA** 2021/22

JUSTICE AND CORRECTIONAL SERVICES



DEPARTMENT OF JUSTICE AND CONSTITUTIONAL DEVELOPMENT (DOJ&CD)

In addition to the mandate it derives from the Constitution of the Republic of South Africa of 1996, the DJ&CD derives its mandate from a number of acts. The legislation and constitutional framework assign functions to the department such as the:

- establishment of magistrate's courts and the appointment of magistrates and other judicial officers;
- establishment and functioning of the National Prosecuting Authority (NPA);
- conducting of criminal proceedings;
- prosecution of organised crime and corruption;
- forfeiture of assets obtained through illicit means;
- provision of witness protection to vulnerable and intimidated witnesses and their related persons in judicial proceedings;
- establishment and functioning of bodies responsible for legal aid, law reform and rule-making;
- appointment of masters of the high courts;
- management of third-party funds;
- administration of the Guardian's Fund and deceased and insolvent estates;
- management of state litigation;
- regulation and provision of legal advisory services to government departments;
- promotion, protection and enforcement of human rights;
- protection of vulnerable groups; and
- provision of support to Chapter 9 institutions.

As part of its overarching goal of ensuring South Africans feel safe and are able to live without fear, the department plans to invest in ensuring that it serves everyone in South Africa in the most efficient possible manner. Accordingly, over the medium term, it aimed to focus on increasing access to its services, and on strengthening the fight against maladministration and corruption.

Broadening access to justice

In its efforts to afford greater protection, particularly to the more vulnerable among us, the department plans to move towards a more gender-focused criminal justice system by implementing the national strategic plan on gender-based violence and femicide.

This includes designating 115 additional courts as sexual offences courts and improving the management of the National Register for Sex Offenders (NRSO) to ensure that all people who work with children and people with disabilities are properly vetted.

A national action plan to fight racism, racial discrimination, xenophobia and related intolerance, including promoting constitutional awareness and education on the rights of lesbian, gay, bisexual, transgender and intersex people, is

also expected to be implemented. Additionally, planned to upgrade all justice buildings to be accessible to people with disabilities and convert six periodical and/or branch courts into full-service courts in partnership with the Department of Public Works and Infrastructure.

The department also planned to implement programmes to modernise and digitise its services. This is expected to broaden access to justice even further by introducing interventions such as enabling deceased estates and trusts to be registered remotely.

The Trusts Online Services solution enables the online registration and submission of documents in respect of new trusts applications. This solution was piloted at the Masters' Office in Pretoria with identified, trusted agents that used the online portal.

Deceased Estates Online Services, which enables the online registration and submission of documents in respect of new Deceased Estates, at the Masters' Office: Pretoria. Phase 1 of this solution will be rolled out nationally during this financial year by the Office of the Master.

Over the period ahead, the department planned to focus on strengthening access to justice and superior court services, and ensuring measures are adopted to mitigate against Coronavirus Disease 2019 (COVID-19).

To strengthen access to its services, the department planned to employ additional researchers and registrars to enable it to increase the percentage of default judgments finalised within 14 days and ensure that all warrants of release are delivered within one day of being issued.

Integrated Justice System

In its efforts to improve the efficiency and effectiveness of the South African criminal justice process, the department planned four key initiatives over the 2022/23 period:

- **Criminal Justice System e-Documents and Forms (Justice Forms):** This initiative focuses on reviewing processes to eliminate forms that are made redundant by the electronic exchange of information between Criminal Justice System departments as well as the digitisation of all documents and certificates that remain necessary.
- **Court Audio Visual Solution for case participants – Phase 2:** This will be a video conferencing and video-ID verification facility that will be used for witnesses/victims' interviews and testimony in cases where direct contact is not feasible or very expensive, as well as in cases where expert witnesses are required in court. In cases where the public cannot afford the cost of data or does not have the smart devices needed to connect to the Court Dial-in facility, these services will be made available at local government offices for use based on the arrangement.
- **E-Scheduling and Messaging for Courts:** This is a court information management and sharing system that allows for the tracking of court dates, court process start times, arrival and checking-in of witnesses, victims, the

accused, defence lawyers and prosecutors. This system will facilitate the scheduling and communication of court decisions such as postponements and new dates. The solution was developed and tested, and subsequently rolled into production. The pilot commenced at the Bronkhorstspruit and Cullinan magistrates' courts.

- **Integrated Bail Payment Processing and Release Management (Pay-Bail-Anywhere):** The Integrated Bail Payment Processing and Release Management solution will, once it is fully developed and operational, enable lawyers/family members of the accused to “pay bail anywhere”.

Rooting out fraud and corruption

Initiatives are under way to strengthen the fight against fraud and corruption. These include: reviewing the extradition regime and the mutual legal assistance framework to improve cases of international criminal cooperation; appointing 15 legal practitioners in specialised commercial crimes courts through a transfer of R34.3 million over the medium term to Legal Aid South Africa; and hiring an estimated 90 additional permanent staff with specialised skills and experience, and training and developing existing employees.

Funds have been allocated to the NPA to strengthen the state's capacity to prosecute allegations of crime and corruption, by recruiting aspirant prosecutors and rebuilding critical capacity in units such as asset forfeiture, sexual offences and priority crimes litigation, among other things.

Office of the Chief Justice (OCJ) and Judicial Administration

The OCJ is mandated to render support to the Chief Justice as the head of the judiciary, as provided for in Section 165 (6) of the Constitution of the Republic of South Africa of 1996, read with the Superior Courts Act of 2013. The department is also required to:

- provide and coordinate legal and administrative support to the Chief Justice;
- provide communication and relationship management services; provide internal and intergovernmental coordination;
- develop administration policies, and norms and standards for courts; support the development of judicial policy, and norms and standards;
- support the judicial function of the Constitutional Court;
- and support the Judicial Service Commission and South African Judicial Education Institute in the execution of their mandates.

Office of the State Attorney

The Office of the State Attorney provides legal services to national and provincial departments. State attorneys represent the State in all lawsuits and transactions for and against the State.

In 2020 the Office of the State Attorney finalised 574 litigation cases, this increased to 657 litigation cases in the 2021/22 financial year. This is an increase of 83 cases or 14%. More cases were settled through alternative dispute

resolutions in 2021/22 compared to 2020/21. In 2020/21, 358 cases were settled. In 2021/22, cases resolved through mediation increased to 414 litigation cases, an increase of 56 cases or 16%.

The Intergovernmental National Litigation Forum has been resuscitated to ensure that government has a coordinated approach to the management of State litigation, emphasising the reduction of state contingent liability.

The courts

Constitutional Court

The Constitutional Court as the highest court in the land and its decisions cannot be changed by any other court. The Constitutional Court, based at Constitution Hill in Johannesburg, is presided over by 11 judges who stand guard over the Constitution and protect everyone's human rights.

When a person, an organisation or a company is not satisfied with any decision of the High Court on any matter; they can approach the Constitutional Court for a review of that decision. Normal appeal matters are however dealt with at the Supreme Court of Appeal (SCA).

Supreme Court of Appeal

The SCA, situated in Bloemfontein in the Free State, has Jurisdiction to hear and determine an appeal any decision of a High Court. Except for the Constitutional Court, no other court can change a decision of the SCA. Only the SCA can change one of its own decisions. The SCA consists of a President, Deputy President and 23 permanently appointed judges.

High courts

The High Court handles any case which exceeds the jurisdiction of the Magistrates' Court or when a person or organisation goes to the court to change a decision of a Magistrates' Court, which means appealing a case. Cases of the High Court are listened to by one Judge, meaning a person with many years of practical experience.

However, if it is a case on appeal, then at least two Judges must hear the case. Sometimes if the case is about a very serious crime then a Judge and two experienced people in law who are usually advocates or Magistrates who have retired, will listen to the case.

The two people are called assessors. The assessors usually help the Judge to make a decision. The High Court divisions have "jurisdiction" – the right to hear a case – over defined provincial areas in which they are situated, and the decisions of the High Court are binding on Magistrates' courts within their areas of jurisdiction.

They usually only hear civil matters involving more than R100 000, and serious criminal cases. They also hear any appeals or reviews from lower courts (Magistrates' courts) which fall in their geographical jurisdiction. The High Court

usually hears any matter involving a person's status such as adoption and insolvency.

There are 14 high courts: the Eastern Cape High courts in Grahamstown, Gqeberha, Mthatha and Bhisho; the Free State High Court in Bloemfontein; the North Gauteng High Court in Pretoria; the South Gauteng High Court in Johannesburg; the KwaZulu-Natal High courts in Pietermaritzburg and Durban; the Limpopo High Court in Thohoyandou; the Northern Cape High Court, Kimberley; the North West High Court, Mafikeng; and the Western Cape High Court in Cape Town and Mpumalanga High Court in Mbombela.

The following specialist high courts exercise national jurisdiction:

- The Labour Court and Labour Appeal Court in Braamfontein, Gauteng, which adjudicate over labour disputes and hear labour appeals, respectively.
- The Land Claims Court, in Randburg, Gauteng, which hears matters on the restitution of land rights that people lost after 1913 as a result of racially discriminatory land laws.
- The Competition Appeal Court, situated in Cape Town, which deals with appeals from the Competition Tribunal.
- The Electoral Court, situated in Bloemfontein, which sits mainly during elections to deal with associated disputes.
- The Tax Court, situated in Pretoria, which deals with tax-related matters, including non-compliance with tax obligations.

Regional courts

Regional courts are established largely in accordance with provincial boundaries with a regional court division for each province to hear matters within their jurisdiction.

Magistrates' courts

Magistrates' courts are the lower courts which deal with less serious criminal and civil cases. They are divided into Regional courts and District courts. In Criminal courts, the State prosecutes people for breaking the law. Criminal courts can be divided into two groups: Regional Magistrates' Courts and Ordinary Magistrates' Courts (also called District Courts). Currently, Regional Magistrates' Courts only deal with criminal cases whereas the District Magistrates' Courts deal with criminal and civil cases.

The Magistrate makes the decisions in a Magistrates' Court; sometimes with the support of lay assessors. Magistrates' Courts can be divided into either criminal courts or civil courts. The Regional Magistrates' Courts deal with more serious cases than the ordinary Magistrates' Courts such as murder, rape, armed robbery and serious assault. In terms of the Criminal Law (Sentencing) Amendment Act of 2007, a Regional Magistrates' Court can sentence a person who has been found guilty of offences that include murder or rape to imprisonment for life.

The court can also sentence people who have been found guilty of certain offences such as armed robbery or stealing a motor vehicle to prison for a period up to 20 years. A Regional Magistrates' Court can impose a maximum fine of R300 000. Regional courts now have civil jurisdiction to the extent that divorce matters can now be heard there. District courts try the less serious cases. They cannot try cases of murder, treason, rape, terrorism or sabotage.

They can sentence a person to a maximum of three years in prison or a maximum fine of R100 000. Ordinary Magistrates' Courts can hear civil cases when the claims are for less than R100 000. They cannot deal with certain matters such as divorces, arguments about a person's will and matters where it is asked if a person is mentally sane or not.

Small Claims courts

Small Claims courts offer members of the public a quicker and easier way of resolving disputes that involve amounts limited to R15 000 and they can do so without the need for a legal representative.

Equality courts

Equality courts are courts designed to deal with matters covered by the Promotion of Equality and Prevention of Unfair Discrimination Act of 2000, also known as the Equality Act. Members of the public bring to the court matters such as unfair discrimination, harassment, hate speech and the publication of information that discriminates unfairly.

Community courts

Community courts, such as the Hatfield Community Court in Pretoria, are normal district magistrates' courts that assist in dealing with matters in partnership with the community and business. These courts focus on restorative justice processes, such as diverting young offenders into suitable programmes.

Traditional courts

There are traditional courts (formerly chiefs' courts) established at traditional community areas in rural villages.

Sexual offences courts

The courts feature specially trained officials, procedures and equipment to reduce the chance of secondary trauma for victims.

National Register for Sex Offenders

The NRSO is a record of names of those found guilty of sexual offences against children and mentally disabled people. The register gives employers in the public or private sectors such as schools, crèches and hospitals the right to check that the person being hired is fit to work with children or mentally disabled people.

By mid-2022, plans were underway to amend regulations for the NRSO, which

has been aligned with the new Criminal Law (Sexual Offences and Related Matters) Amendment Act of 2021.

In response to the call made by women of South Africa in 2018, this Amendment Act requires the particulars of all convicted sex offenders to be entered in the NRSO, irrespective of the age and the mental status of the victim. No registered sex offender will be allowed to work or operate a business in an environment accessible to vulnerable persons – defined as children, female students or lecturers under the age of 25 years, persons living in shelters, and certain categories of persons with disabilities and older persons.

In facilitating the implementation of this Act, the DoJ&CD has developed the Online Web Portal and the SMS Notification System for the National Register on Sexual Offences services, which will be made accessible to the NRSO applicants. The decentralisation of certain services of the NRSO to the lower courts will also commence during the same period. By implementing the NRSO, the department intends to curb the exposure of vulnerable persons to paedophiles and serial sex offenders, and also to prevent sex offending in the country.

National Child Protection Register (NCPR)

In terms of Section 126 of the Children's Act of 2005, employers offering services which allow for access to children must, before employing a person, establish from the Registrar of the NCPR whether or not the potential employee's name is on Part B of the NCPR.

If the potential employee's name appears on the register, he or she will not be allowed to work in an environment which allows for access to children, since persons whose names appear on the register have been found unsuitable to work with children by the court.

Maintenance

Maintenance is the obligation to provide another person, for example a minor, with housing, food, clothing, education and medical care, or with the means that are necessary for providing the person with these essentials. As part of further improving the maintenance system, the Maintenance Amendment Act of 2015 was enacted to ensure that every child receives the appropriate parental care, basic nutrition, shelter, basic healthcare services, education and other related support. The amendment also ensures the blacklisting of defaulters.

Gender-based violence and femicide (GBVF)

Domestic violence means any physical abuse, sexual abuse, emotional, verbal and psychological abuse, economic abuse, intimidation, harassment, stalking, damage to property, trespassing where the parties do not share the same residence or any other controlling or abusive behaviour towards a complainant, where such conduct harms or may cause imminent harm to the safety, health or well-being of the complainant. To curb GBVF, government has adopted a zero-tolerance towards rape, violation of the rights of lesbian, gay, bisexual,

transgender and intersex people, and other forms of violence towards women and children.

GBVF remain a pervasive challenge in South Africa. The courts continued to put special emphasis on convictions in sexual offences cases, with the high conviction rate of 74,4% recorded for sexual offences cases.

In terms of the Criminal and Related Matters Amendment Act of 2021, bail in GBVF matters must be denied, unless it would be in the interests of justice to grant such bail. This Amendment Act also brings to an end the granting of what is referred to as the 'police bail' or 'prosecution bail' in GBVF matters. All applications for bail in these cases must therefore be made in a court of law.

The Domestic Violence Amendment Act of 2021 further permits the use of online applications for protection orders. This is a viable option for victims of domestic violence to access court services remotely, and in a convenient and safe environment of their choice.

The department has already developed the Online Web Portal for Domestic Violence Applications for Protection Orders.

Human trafficking

Human trafficking has become a focus of attention in the country following the introduction of the new visa requirements for children travelling through South Africa's ports of entry. Legislation aimed at preventing trafficking defines trafficking to include the recruitment, transportation, sale or harbour of people by means of force, deceit, the abuse of vulnerability and the abuse of power for exploitation.

Drug abuse

To curb the growing abuse of drugs, the DoJ&CD has amended Schedules 1 and 2 of the Drugs and Drug Trafficking Act of 1992 to make the use and possession of drugs such as nyaope (also known as woonga or wunga) a criminal offence. The use, possession and sale of dependence-producing drugs is strictly prohibited and punishable in South Africa. If convicted, a fine and/or imprisonment period of up to 15 years can be imposed. Selling or dealing in nyaope is punishable with a fine and/or imprisonment for a period of up to 25 years.

Role players:

Legal Aid South Africa (Legal Aid SA)

Legal Aid SA provides legal aid or makes legal aid available to indigent persons within the budget allocated to it by the State. Legal Aid SA has introduced a "Please Call Me" service through which members of the public send a "Please Call Me" text message and a legal advisor returns the call at no cost to the sender.

The institution has also established a social media presence on Facebook, Twitter and Instagram. Legal Aid SA Land Rights Management Unit (LRMU) has

been operational since 5 January 2022 and is being managed by the Legal Aid SA National Office. Most legal practitioners who were previously providing legal representation to farm occupiers, labour tenants and restitution claimants through the LRMU have been accredited with Legal Aid SA on the Judicare system and continue to provide legal services as required.

Special Investigating Unit

The SIU works closely with the NPA to ensure that prosecutions take place as soon as possible. It also works with the AFU in cases where the powers of this unit are more suitable for recovering the proceeds of crime. In 2022 the SIU marked its 25th anniversary.

In the 2021/22 financial year, the SIU achieved significant recoveries through combining quality investigations with civil litigation. Between 2013 and 2021, the SIU recovered public money and assets amounting to R2.6 billion, set aside contracts to the value of R18 billion and as of 26 March 2022, referred matters worth R75.1 billion for civil litigation in the High Court and the Special Tribunal for civil litigation.

The establishment of the Special Tribunal in 2019 has expedited the work of the SIU. The Tribunal has adjudicated cases referred to it by the SIU amounting to R8.6 billion in unlawful contracts. One of the cases that were finalised includes the Beitbridge border fence contract worth more than R40 million. The tender was irregular and set aside, and contractors were ordered to pay back the money received.

The SIU had enrolled 119 cases worth more than R12.8 billion at the Special Tribunal. Out of the 119 cases, 48 cases worth R2.2 billion were related to the COVID-19 procurement corruption and maladministration.

National Prosecuting Authority

The NPA structure includes the National Prosecutions Service (NPS), the Witness Protection Programme, the AFU and units such as the Sexual Offences and Community Affairs (SOCA) Unit, the Specialised Commercial Crime Unit (SCCU) and the Priority Crimes Litigation Unit.

Despite the continuous performance inhibiting challenges hampering optimal performance attributable to the COVID-19 pandemic, the NPA continued to improve organisational performance, compared to the previous two financial years.

In ensuring that the NPA delivers quality prosecutions, high conviction rates were maintained in all court forums. Conviction rates of 91,1% in the high courts, 80,8% in the regional courts and 94% in the district courts were recorded in the the 2022/23 financial year. Some progress has been made in improving case finalisation.

Leveraging on the Fusion Centre, the NPA has been crucial in addressing corruption relating to the COVID-19 funds. By mid-2022, a total of 232 matters had been registered with the Fusion Centre, 173 matters were under investigation

and 59 had been closed. A total of 244 cases were registered with 140 under investigation, 54 closed and 61 cases had been placed on court rolls with 126 accused persons.

Asset Forfeiture Unit

The AFU continues to play a critical part in addressing the scourge of corruption and has delivered significant returns in the past year. The AFU obtained freezing orders to the value of R5.46 billion in corruption or related offences. At the end of the 2021/22 financial year, R70.1 million was paid into the Criminal Assets Recovery Amount and R210.8 million was paid to the victims of crime. The AFU can seize and forfeit property that was bought from the proceeds of crime or property that was used to commit a crime.

The Family Advocate

The role of the Family Advocate is to promote and protect the best interests of the children in civil disputes over parental rights and responsibilities.

Sexual Offences and Community Affairs Unit

The SOCA acts against the victimisation of vulnerable groups, mainly women and children. One of the unit's key achievements in ensuring government's commitment to the fight against sexual offences and GBV is the establishment of Thuthuzela Care Centres (TCCs).

The TCCs are one-stop facilities that aim to provide survivors with a broad range of essential services – from emergency medical care counselling to court preparation – in a holistic, integrated and victim-friendly manner. The Thuthuzela Project is supported by the roll-out of victim support rooms in an effort to show empathy to victims of violent crime, especially in cases of sexual offences, child abuse and domestic violence.

The TCC model aims to provide a more effective and victim-centric approach to reporting sexual offences. During the 2021/22 financial year, the NPA increased the number of operational TCCs from 55 to 60.

The fight against violent crime, particularly rape, has recently been undermined by the challenges around the management of forensic DNA due to shortages of essential chemicals required for DNA analysis. It resulted in a national backlog of these cases being prosecuted in courts.

As part of the interventions, the NPA established a partnership with the South African Police Service's (SAPS) Forensic Sciences Laboratory to reduce the backlog in DNA processing.

Family violence, child protection and sexual offences units (FCS)

The FCS units operate in all SAPS clusters across the country. To give further impetus to the investigation of crimes of this nature, forensic social workers were appointed to assist in cases of child sexual abuse by conducting forensic assessments, compiling court reports and providing expert evidence in court.

Priority Crimes Litigation Unit (PCLU)

The PCLU is a specialist unit mandated to tackle cases that threaten national security. The PCLU was created by presidential proclamation and is allocated categories of cases either by the President or by the National Director.

National Prosecutions Service

A significant majority of the NPA's prosecutors are housed in the NPS, the organisation's biggest unit. The NPS is headed by the Deputy Director of Public Prosecutions (DPPs).

They head the respective regional jurisdictions, which are attached to the high courts of the country. All the public prosecutors and state advocates manning the district, regional and high courts report to the DPPs in their respective areas of jurisdiction.

Specialised Commercial Crime Unit

The SCCU's mandate is to effectively prosecute complex commercial crime cases emanating from the commercial branches of the SAPS. The client base of the unit comprises a broad spectrum of complainants in commercial cases, ranging from private individuals and corporate bodies to state departments.

Public Protector

The PP investigates complaints from the public or on own initiative against government at any level, its officials, persons performing public functions, corporations or companies where the State and statutory councils are involved. The PP's services are free and available to everyone. Complainants' names are kept confidential as far as possible.

The President appoints the PP on recommendation of the National Assembly and in terms of the Constitution, for a non-renewable period of seven years. The PP is subject only to the Constitution of the Republic of South Africa of 1996b and the law, and functions independently from government and any political party.

No person or organ of State may interfere with the functioning of the PP. The PP has the power to report a matter to Parliament, which will debate it and ensure that the PP's recommendations are followed.

DEPARTMENT OF CORRECTIONAL SERVICES (DCS)

The DCS derives its mandate from the Criminal Procedure Act of 1977; the Correctional Services Act of 1998, as amended; the *2005 White Paper on Corrections*; and the *2014 White Paper on Remand Detention Management in South Africa*.

This legislation allows the department to contribute to the preservation and promotion of a just, peaceful and safe society by ensuring that the corrections environment is secure, safe and humane, and that offenders are optimally rehabilitated to reduce their likelihood of reoffending.

The department's overarching objectives are to detain inmates in safe, secure and humane conditions in correctional centres and remand detention facilities; provide sentenced offenders with needs-based rehabilitation programmes and interventions; and reintegrate offenders into communities as law-abiding citizens by effectively managing non-custodial sentences and parole.

To achieve these objectives, over the period ahead, the department will focus on implementing its self-sufficiency and strategic framework, providing adequate security at correctional facilities, and facilitating restorative justice.

In response to budget constraints, over the period ahead, the department plans to become more self-sufficient. This will entail running production workshops and agricultural farms aimed at upskilling and rehabilitating offenders by training them to produce items – such as furniture, uniforms, shoes, baked goods and agricultural products – that can be sold or used within the department. The department plans to supplement these potential income streams by hiring out offender labour.

The department has farms, land, dairies, bakeries, workshops and many other amenities which position us to survive without having to rely on government funding. Eight out of 48 management areas are no longer buying cabbage, spinach, beetroot and onions, as they produce enough supply for inmate rations. The DCS was expected to increase the number of self-sufficient management areas in the 2022/23 financial year.

Five management areas, Goedemoed (Free State), Kirkwood (Eastern Cape), Rooigrond (North West), Waterval (KwaZulu-Natal) and Zonderwater (Gauteng), are now fully sustainable on red meat, while Drakenstein (Western Cape) and Zonderwater are also no longer procuring chicken meat. The estimated cost savings as a result of implementing Self Sufficiency initiatives in the department amount to R163 million rands.

During the 2022/23 financial year, the department was expected to heighten production in its livestock and plant production farms and textile workshops. It had invested in new machinery to assist in the mass production of uniforms for both inmates and officials.

The COVID-19 pandemic had placed increased pressure on the department to provide adequate security for staff and inmates, as infected and exposed inmates need to be isolated and quarantined, which poses difficulties as most of the centres are overcrowded.

Offender development

Regarding offender development, offenders participate in Long Occupation Skills programmes, Short Occupational Skills programmes, Technical and Vocational Education and Training College programmes, General Education and Training, Further Education and Training and the Grade 12 National Senior Certificate. Offenders also receive psychological, social and spiritual services.

The department was expected to also extend correctional programmes in the 2022/23 financial year to remand detainees to assist them to develop general life

skills that they could apply during detention and upon their release to prevent future offending behaviour.

The programmes will focus on several areas such as emotional health and well-being, problem solving, emotional intelligence, substance abuse, conflict resolution, domestic violence and restoration of relations.

Gender Responsive Centre

The DCS launched the first of its kind Gender Responsive Centre for incarcerated women in South Africa on 12 December 2022 at Atteridgeville, near Pretoria. This is in line with government's commitment to implement the United Nations (UN) Rules for the Treatment of Women Prisoners and Non-Custodial Measures for Women Offenders, also known as the Bangkok Rules.

It is under this banner that the UN Office on Drugs and Crime Regional Office for Southern Africa raised the importance of special needs for women in conflict with the law who are often faced with continuous discrimination in the criminal justice system. Female offenders consists of a small proportion of the South African correctional centres total population.

Female offenders are often detained in adverse conditions characterised by among others overcrowding, violence and lack of gender medical attention. It is of these critical reasons that DCS took action to affirm its commitment in making the Bangkok Rules a living reality.

Other role players

Medical Parole Advisory Board

The Correctional Matters Amendment Act of 2011 provides for a new medical parole policy and correctional supervision.

Correctional Supervision and Parole Board

Correctional Supervision and Parole boards are responsible for dealing with parole matters and matters of correctional supervision. The Correctional Supervision and Parole boards have decision-making competency except:

- decisions regarding the granting of parole to people who are declared dangerous criminals in terms of Section 286A of the Criminal Procedure Act (CPA) of 1998.
- the converting of sentences of imprisonment imposed in terms of Section 276 (A) (3) of the CPA of 1998 into correctional supervision.
- decisions with regard to those sentenced to life imprisonment. In such cases, recommendations are submitted to the courts that in turn will make a decision in respect of conditional placement. Correctional Supervision and Parole boards are chaired by community members who are regarded as suitable and capable of carrying out the responsibilities. The DCS provides the members with intensive training in respect of the processes, legislative implications and relative policies.



Official Guide to **SOUTH AFRICA** 2021/22

MINERAL RESOURCES AND ENERGY



The Department of Mineral Resources and Energy (DMRE) is mandated to ensure the transparent and efficient regulation of South Africa's mineral resources and minerals industry, and the secure and sustainable provision of energy in support of socio-economic development.

Several Acts regulate the mining, minerals and energy sectors. Key among these are the:

- **Petroleum Products Act of 1977**, which regulates the petroleum industry at the manufacturing, wholesale and retail levels;
- **Mine Health and Safety Act of 1996**, which governs mine health and safety;
- **Mineral and Petroleum Resources Development Act of 2002**, which provides the regulatory framework for equitable access to and the sustainable development of mineral resources and related matters;
- **Electricity Regulation Act of 2006**, which establishes a national regulatory framework for the electricity supply industry, including registration and licensing; and
- **National Energy Act of 2008**, which empowers the minister to plan for and ensure the security of supply for the energy sector.

Over the medium term, the department aimed to continue focusing on transforming mining and energy resources, rehabilitating mines and the environment, extending access to electricity, enhancing energy efficiency, and managing nuclear energy in accordance with international commitments.

This focus is intended to ensure that South Africa has an adequate supply of electricity and liquid fuels to maintain economic activity and prevent economic disruptions, and to give effect to a mining sector that prioritises the welfare of its human resources and the environment.

The department's regulatory and oversight work is labour intensive. It requires inspections to be conducted to ensure that mining companies and petroleum licence holders comply with legislative requirements, and that electricity connections are verified through the integrated national electrification programme.

Transforming mining and energy resources

As the department seeks to accelerate transformation within the mining sector over the MTEF period, it will aim to monitor and enforce compliance with the mining charter. This is expected to be done by conducting 636 social and labour plan verification inspections and economic verification audits on 1 275 mines.

The department's objective of inspecting 4 500 petroleum retail sites and issuing mining rights or permits to a targeted 360 historically disadvantaged South Africans over the period ahead is intended to enforce compliance with regulatory standards and transformation imperatives in the petroleum sector. To address backlogs in the processing of mining licence applications and to improve efficiency, the department plans to invest in a new IT system.

Rehabilitating mines and the environment

To protect the health and safety of mine employees and people in surrounding communities over the medium term, the department aims to rehabilitate nine mines and seal 120 shafts/holings, and conduct 3 825 environmental verification inspections.

Extending access to electricity

Ensuring that all South Africans have access to electricity is a key government priority. The department oversees and manages the financing and implementation of the integrated national electrification programme, manages and coordinates technical audits, and manages annual planning processes such as electrification infrastructure plans. It was expected to review procurement programmes for independent power producers in 2022/23.

Enhancing energy efficiency

The energy efficiency and demand-side management grant enables municipalities to upgrade municipal infrastructure that is not energy efficient, such as replacing street and traffic lights with greener technology.

Managing nuclear energy

Funds have been earmarked in the 2022/23 financial year for preparatory work to procure a multipurpose reactor to replace the 55-year-old SAFARI-1 research reactor, which is approaching the end of its useful life. The reactor is used for research and development, and to manufacture medical isotopes.

Role players:

- **Mine Health and Safety Council:** It was established in terms of the Mine Health and Safety Act of 1996, and is listed as a schedule 3A public entity in terms of the Public Finance Management Act (PFMA) of 1999. It is mandated to advise the Minister of Mineral Resources and Energy on occupational health and safety at mines, develop legislation, conduct research, and liaise with other statutory bodies. The council was expected to continue focusing on improving the safety of mineworkers by offering programmes to promote safety awareness, and improve occupational health and safety for workers.
- **Council for Mineral Technology Research (Mintek):** Mintek's mandate, as set out in the Mineral Technology Act of 1989, is to maximise the value derived from South Africa's mineral resources through, among other things, research and development, technology transfer, and the creation of an enabling environment for the establishment and expansion of mineral industries. To this end, Mintek develops appropriate, innovative technology for transfer to industry, and provides the industry with test work, consultancy, analytical and mineralogical services.

- **Council for Geoscience (CGS):** The CGS was established in terms of the Geoscience Act of 1993 to promote the search for and exploitation of any mineral in South Africa. It is mandated to generate, compile, curate and publish world-class geoscience knowledge products, provide geoscience-related services to the South African public and industry, and render advisory services related to geohazards and geo-environmental pollution.
- **South African State Diamond and Precious Minerals Regulator (SADPMR):** The SADPMR was established to administer the Diamonds Act of 1986 (as amended) and the Precious Metals Act of 2005. The Diamond Exchange and Export Centre (DEEC) was established by the SADPMR in terms of Section 59(b) of the Diamonds Second Amendment Act of 2005 and started operating on 14 January 2008. One of the core functions of the SADPMR is to facilitate the buying, selling, exporting and importing of diamonds through its DEEC, which is a secure and controlled environment where goods are offered to other licensees. It plays a vital role in ensuring that unpolished diamond tenders are facilitated fairly to the local market.
- **State Diamond Trader (SDT):** The mandate of the SDT, as defined in the Diamonds Amendment Act of 2005, is to buy and sell rough diamonds, and to promote equitable access to and beneficiation of the country's diamond resources. It is listed as a schedule 3B public entity in terms of the PFMA of 1999. The trader is mandated to conduct research, develop a client base, contribute to the growth of the local diamond beneficiation industry, and develop efficient means of marketing diamonds not suitable for local beneficiation. Over the medium term, the trader aimed to continue growing the local diamond beneficiation industry and increase the sale of rough diamonds to historically disadvantaged South Africans. The trader generates revenue from the sale of rough diamonds.
- **Sasol:** The international integrated chemicals and energy company develops and commercialises technologies, and builds and operates world-scale facilities to produce a range of high-value product streams, including liquid fuels, chemicals and low-carbon electricity.
- **Eskom:** It generates about 95% of the electricity used in South Africa and about 45% of the electricity used in Africa. It generates, transmits and distributes electricity to industrial, mining, commercial, agricultural and residential customers.
- **iGas:** It is the official state agency for the development of the hydrocarbon gas industry in southern Africa.
- **Petroleum Agency South Africa (PASA):** It promotes exploration for onshore and offshore oil and gas resources, and their optimal development.
- **Petronet:** It owns, operates, manages and maintains a network of 3 000 km of high pressure petroleum and gas pipelines, on behalf of government.
- **National Energy Regulator of South Africa (NERSA):** It is the regulatory authority for electricity, piped gas and petroleum pipelines.

- **National Nuclear Regulator (NNR):** It is responsible for safety standards and regulatory practices for the protection of people, property and the environment against nuclear damage.
- **Nuclear Energy Corporation of South Africa (NECSA):** It is responsible for undertaking and promoting research and development in the field of nuclear energy and radiation sciences. It is also responsible for processing source material, including uranium enrichment, and cooperating with other institutions, locally and abroad, on nuclear and related matters.
- **South African National Energy Development Institute:** It is mandated to stimulate innovation in energy research and development, transform the gender and race profile of researchers in the sector, and improve South Africa's competitiveness in energy research internationally.
- **Central Energy Fund (CEF):** It is governed by the CEF Act of 1977 and the Companies Act of 2008. Its mandate is to research, finance, develop and exploit appropriate energy solutions to contribute to South Africa's security of energy supply. Through its subsidiaries, the fund is also mandated to finance and promote the acquisition of coal; exploit coal deposits; manufacture liquid fuel, oil and other products from coal; market these products; and acquire, generate, manufacture, market, distribute or research any other form of energy. The fund's subsidiaries are: the Petroleum Oil and Gas Corporation of South Africa (PetroSA); South African Gas Development Company; PASA; Oil Pollution Control South Africa; the Strategic Fuel Fund; African Exploration Mining Finance Corporation; ETA Energy; and CCE Solutions.
- **PetroSA:** It is a wholly state-owned company of the Government of South Africa and registered as a commercial entity under the South African law. It is a subsidiary of the CEF.
- **National Radioactive Waste Disposal Institute (NRWDI):** It was established in terms of the NRWDI Act of 2008 to manage the disposal of radioactive waste at the national level. The institute is responsible for the long-term care and disposal of radioactive waste in a safe, technically sound, socially acceptable, environmentally responsible and economically feasible manner. By mid-2022, the NRWDI had started with project development work for the establishment of the Centralised Interim Storage Facility for the storage of used nuclear fuel.

Mining Qualifications Authority (MQA)

The MQA is a statutory body established in terms of the Mine Health and Safety Act of 1996 and is a registered Sector Education and Training Authority (SETA) for the mining and minerals sector in terms of the Skills Development Act of 1998, as amended.

It supports the objectives of the National Skills Development Plan 2020-2030, as guided by the Department of Higher Education and Training, and also supports the objectives of the Mining Charter in terms of the Minerals and Petroleum Resources Development Act of 1996.

The MQA is responsible for administering a number of skills development initiatives. Skills programmes and learnerships aim to develop a skilled and educated workforce whose skills are recognised and valued in terms of the National Qualifications Framework. This is to ensure that the mining and minerals sector has sufficient competent people who will improve health and safety, employment equity and increase productivity.

Reserves

Gold

The Witwatersrand Basin remains the world's largest gold resource and South African gold only accounts for 4.2% of global gold production, according to the Minerals Council South Africa. The large-scale gold mines operating in South Africa include the record setting TauTona Gold Mine, which extends 3,9 km underground. TauTona means "great lion" in Setswana.

Coal

South Africa's coal resources are contained in the Ecca deposits, a stratum of the Karoo Supergroup, and date from the Permian period between 280 and 250 Ma. In general terms, they are largely located in the north-eastern quarter of the country. The coal measures are generally shallow, largely unfaulted and lightly inclined, making their exploitation suitable for opencast and mechanised mining.

South Africa derives over 70% of its energy requirement (electricity and liquid fuels) from coal. According to the Minerals Council South Africa, South Africa has coal reserves sufficient to satisfy its needs for more than a century.

However the locus of production is gradually shifting away from the traditional Witbank or Emalahleni coalfield as collieries approach the end of their productive lives. Emphasis is being placed on exploring and developing the Waterberg coalfield as well as others in Limpopo.

Platinum group metals (PGMs)

South Africa is home to 75% of the world reserves of the PGMs, which include platinum, palladium, rhodium, iridium, osmium and ruthenium. These metals are extremely resistant to corrosion, hence they are used in a number of industrial processes, technologies and commercial applications. Consumer and industrial products made with platinum and other PGMs include flat-panel monitors, glass fibre, medical tools, computer hard drives, nylon and razors.

South Africa's Bushveld Complex hosts approximately 80% of PGM-bearing ore. In medical applications, PGMs are used in the manufacture of anti-cancer drugs, cardiac treatment, implants and dental applications. PGMs such as platinum, ruthenium and iridium are key components in fuel cell catalysts and electrolyzers for green hydrogen production.

Platinum

The Merensky Reef, stretching from southern Zimbabwe through to the Rustenburg and Pretoria regions, is the centre of platinum mining in South Africa. The durability, quality, and aesthetic appeal of silvery-white platinum and palladium has for centuries contributed to its appeal in jewellery manufacture.

Palladium

South Africa is the world's second-largest palladium producer. All of South Africa's production is sourced from the Bushveld Igneous Complex, which hosts the world's largest resource of PGMs. Palladium, together with platinum, is more abundant than any of the other PGMs.

Non-ferrous metals

Non-ferrous metals (including cobalt, copper, lead, nickel and zinc) do not contain iron and are generally more expensive than ferrous metals (contain iron). They are more malleable than ferrous metals, highly corrosion resistant, have low density, non-magnetic, and have good electrical conductivity, which makes their applications wide-ranging, from industrial usage to commercial and residential utilisation.

South Africa is home to most of the non-ferrous metals including titanium, although South Africa currently produces no titanium. The country contains 0.5% of global ilmenite and 0.09% of the world's rutile reserves, and is ranked 6th and 3rd globally in ilmenite and rutile reserve abundance. Titanium occurs primarily in seven minerals namely: anatase, brookite, ilmenite, leucoxene, perovskite, rutile, and sphene.

Chrome ore

According to the US Geological Survey of 2018, South Africa and Kazakhstan host 95% of the world's chromium reserves (shipping grade), at 200 000 tonnes and 230 000 tonnes, respectively. South Africa has 72% of the world's chrome resources.

Copper

Palabora, a large copper mine, smelter and refinery complex managed by the Palabora Mining Company in Limpopo is South Africa's only producer of refined copper. Useful by-product metals and minerals include zirconium chemicals, magnetite and nickel sulphate as well as small quantities of gold, silver and platinum.

Substitutes for copper include aluminium which is used in power cables, electrical equipment, automobile radiators, and cooling and refrigeration tubing. Titanium and steel are also substitutes used in heat exchangers. Optical fibre substitutes for copper are used in telecommunications applications, and plastics substitutes for copper are used in water pipe, drainpipe and plumbing fixtures.

The Ga-Ramokoka Carbonatite Complex in North West hosts numerous minerals that span an estimated tonnage of Rare Earth Elements at 470 thousand tonnes, phosphates at 300 thousand tonnes and copper 30 thousand tonnes. The potential value of a suite of minerals in the carbonatite is estimated at R1.4 billion.

Manganese

South Africa hosts the largest known deposit of manganese and the country is a leading producer of manganese globally. According to the Minerals Council South Africa, manganese prices have been under pressure because of a strong increase in supply coupled with subdued demand out of China which is the core market for South African producers.

Diamonds

According to the Minerals Council South Africa, the country ranks among the top 10 diamond producers globally, producing 10% of the world's diamonds. In 2021, South Africa produced 9.7 million carats of diamonds, an increase of 14.8% compared to 2020.

The underground mining and recovery of diamonds continues to this day in the vicinity of Kimberley, the site of the early main discoveries in the 19th century.

It is, however, on limited scale with a major focus on reprocessing old tailings dumps to recover diamonds left behind by older recovery processes. The Venetia mine in Limpopo owned by De Beers is South Africa's largest diamond producer.

The Finsch mine in the Northern Cape, part of the Petra Diamonds group, is South Africa's second largest diamond producer and operates exclusively as an underground mine using conventional sub-level caving methods.

Industrial minerals

South Africa boasts a substantial industrial mineral endowment. This category of minerals generally does not get a lot of attention despite its notable size and potential.

Geology

South Africa has a long and complex geological history dating back to many years. The preservation of so much Archaean geology, dating back more than 2 500 million years, has resulted in the Archaean Witwatersrand Basin, as well as several greenstone belts, being preserved.

Energy

South Africa continues to pursue an energy mix as espoused in the country's energy blueprint, the Integrated Resource Plan (IRP). Even though South Africa and the rest of the world are increasingly under pressure to mitigate against

climate change, South Africa's energy capacity is largely dependent on fossil fuels such as coal and petroleum.

Although the country has vast reserves of coal and petroleum resources that it continues to exploit, it has begun investing in clean technologies to ensure transition from a high to low carbon economy, while ensuring security of energy supply.

Liquefied Petroleum Gas (LPG) Rollout Strategy

The LPG Rollout Strategy provides a framework for the expansion of the use of LPG gas in South Africa, with special emphasis on the household sector. It also seeks to ensure optimal contribution of LPG in addressing the country's electricity and other energy supply challenges.

The objectives of the strategy, among others, is to promote national access to safer, cleaner, more efficient, environmentally friendlier and affordable thermal fuel for households; and to encourage households to switch from the use of biomass, coal, electricity and illuminating paraffin to LPG for thermal purposes. LPG also contributes to the green economy of government, which is aimed, among others, at reducing greenhouse gas emissions.

National building standards

Energy-efficient regulations for new buildings form part of the deliverables of South Africa's National Energy Strategy to strengthen standards and regulations for energy efficiency. The energy-efficient regulations apply to residential and commercial buildings, places of learning and worship, certain medical clinics and other categories of building.

The regulations make it compulsory for all new buildings to be designed and constructed to a standard that makes it possible for the user to minimise the energy required to meet the functional requirements. This will save energy significantly, which will relieve pressure on the electricity supply grid. In addition to temperature regulations, all buildings will also have to be fitted with renewable-energy water-heating systems such as solar systems, which also have to comply with South African national standards.

Electricity

The DMRE has implemented various intervention measures on energy security and supply. However, loadshedding is commonplace, adversely impacting mining production and the economy broadly. To meet the commitment for universal access to electricity, 166 000 households were electrified during the 2021/22 financial year.

The department planned to connect an additional 640 000 households to the grid; and a further 45 000 households with non-grid technology (solar home systems) in the next three years.

Energy efficiency is important, with more than 200 municipalities participating in the Energy Efficiency and Demand Side Management grant programme.

By mid-2022, NERSA had registered 553 projects that are under 1 MW, totalling 268 MW.

Since the 2021 announcement and gazetting of the 100 MW embedded generation, the Energy Regulator has registered six generation facilities with a capacity ranging between 1 MW and 10 MW. The total capacity to be generated from the six generation facilities is 24 MW.

The DMRE continues to work with other government departments, under Operation Vulindlela, to streamline approval processes for generation for own use.

Biofuel

The biofuels industry in South Africa, the continent's biggest agricultural producer, has been held back by an inadequate regulatory regime and concerns that biofuels would hurt food security and affect food prices.

Canola, sunflower and soya are feedstock for biodiesel, while sugarcane and sugar beet are feedstock for ethanol. Maize, South Africa's staple food, will not be used in the production of biofuels to ensure food security and control high prices.

The biofuels sector has strong linkages to agriculture, manufacturing and distribution, and has the potential to create substantial numbers of labour-intensive jobs in the agriculture sector in particular. In addition, second-generation biofuel technology will also contribute to South Africa meeting its renewable energy targets sustainably.

Oil and Gas

The Upstream Petroleum Resources Development Bill of 2021 was tabled to Parliament. Among others, the Bills seeks to provide for orderly development of petroleum resources; to provide for equitable access to, and sustainable development of, the nation's petroleum resources; to provide for active state and black persons' participation in the development of the nation's petroleum resources; to provide for a petroleum right that integrates the right to explore and to produce; to designate a state-owned company as an entity responsible for managing the State's carried interest in petroleum rights; and designate the PASA as the regulatory authority for the upstream petroleum sector.

iGas, a subsidiary of the CEF, has acquired an additional 40% ownership of the Republic of Mozambique Pipeline Company pipeline. South Africa and Mozambique jointly own 80% of the pipeline with Sasol owning the remaining 20%.

The CGS has since confirmed the verification of the shale gas samples that were tested internationally. We are now awaiting environmental assessment approval before the next phase. A gas master plan was expected to be presented to Cabinet.

Hydropower

Energy from water can be generated from waves, tides, waterfalls and rivers and will never be depleted as long as water is available. South Africa has a mix of small hydroelectricity stations and pumped-water storage schemes.

Solar power

Most areas in South Africa average more than 2 500 hours of sunshine per year, and average daily solar-radiation levels range between 4,5 kWh/m² and 6,5 kWh/m² in one day. The southern African region, and in fact the whole of Africa, has sunshine all year round. The annual 24-hour global solar radiation average is about 220 W/m² for South Africa.

Solar energy is used to power equipment such as watches, calculators, cookers, water heaters, lighting, water pumping, communication, transportation, power generation, and many more. Solar energy, like all other renewable energies, is very safe and environmentally friendly. There are no emissions as the source of fuel is the sun, unlike coal-powered stations.

Wind power

Wind energy, like solar energy, is a free and sustainable renewable energy source that is being used to generate electricity. The amount of energy that can be extracted from the wind depends on its speed. The higher the wind speed, the more energy can be harnessed to generate electricity on a large scale. South Africa has fair wind potential, especially along the coastal areas of the Western Cape and Eastern Cape.

Hybrid systems

Hybrid energy systems are a combination of two or more renewable energy sources such as photovoltaic, wind, microhydro, storage batteries and fuelpowered generator sets to provide a reliable off-grid supply.

Nuclear

Government has committed, through the Nuclear Energy Policy and IRP, to an energy mix consisting of coal, gas, hydro, nuclear, solar and wind. The nuclear new build programme will enable the country to create jobs, develop skills, create industries, and catapult the country into a knowledge economy. The IRP 2010-2030 envisages 9 600 MW additional nuclear capacity by 2030. The IRP is a 20-year projection on electricity supply and demand.

Eskom operates the Koeberg Nuclear Power Station near Cape Town, the only nuclear power station in South Africa and the entire African continent, which supplies power to the national grid. The Koeberg Nuclear Power Plant units will reach the end of life in July 2024 and plans are underway to extend the life of this plant by an additional 20 years.

Renewable Energy Independent Power Producer Procurement Programme (REIPPPP)

The REIPPPP, established in 2010, has become one of the world's most progressive and successful alternative energy programmes. Ever since the introduction of these renewable energy technology programmes (solar, wind, biomass, small hydro and landfill gas power), plants have been going up across the country, feeding additional, clean energy into the national grid.

The REIPPPP represents the country's most comprehensive strategy to date in achieving the transition to a greener economy. The programme has been designed to contribute to the development of a local green industry and the creation of green jobs. The programme seeks to procure energy from small-scale IPPs, with projects that generate between one MW and five MW of energy from solar, wind, biomass and landfill gas projects.

Through the REIPPPP, government is targeting the procurement of 13 225 MW from IPPs by 2025.

Working for Energy Programme

The Working for Energy Programme is a social programme mainly intended to provide energy services derived from renewable resources to rural and urban low income houses in a manner that facilitates job creation, skills development, community-based enterprise development and the emancipation of youth, women and people with disabilities thereby creating sustainable livelihoods. It is an integral part of the Expanded Public Works Programme.



Official Guide to **SOUTH AFRICA** 2021/22

**POLICE, DEFENCE AND
INTELLIGENCE**



POLICE

The Department of Police is responsible for law-enforcement services, policy determination, direction and overall execution of the department's mandate in relation to relevant legislation. The Minister of Police is responsible for determining national policing policy (Section 206 of the Constitution of the Republic of South Africa of 1996) and the overall execution of the department's mandate, in relation to the key pieces of legislation.

Fighting crime

The department recognises community safety as integral to creating a safe and secure environment that is conducive to social and economic stability, and supporting a better life for all. To achieve these goals, the department will implement initiatives such as the “community-in-blue” concept, the safer cities framework and the integrated schools safety programme; and ensure that community policing forums (CPFs) are functioning and effective.

CPFs are provided for in Section 221(2) of the Constitution and Section 19(1) of the South African Police Service (SAPS) Act of 1995. By mid-2022, there were 772 functional CPFs countrywide.

The top 30 High Contact Crime Weight stations have been prioritised in terms of resources, which includes an additional budget allocation. Station commanders and their members, including provincial commissioners and their management teams, are expected to occupy the streets more often than before and saturate these places with continuous crime prevention and multi-disciplinary operations.

Three police stations were established in 2021/22, namely Mabeskraal, Moeka Vuma and Chatty. By mid-2022, the physical infrastructure at 926 police stations had been modified to be user-friendly for persons with disabilities.

In 2021/22, intelligence network operations focused on the narcotics, trio-crimes (carjackings, house and business robberies), the illicit trade of ferrous and non-ferrous metals, fraud and corruption, gang and public violence, murder and public stability.

Integrated Crime Prevention and Violence

In March 2022, Cabinet approved the Integrated Crime Prevention and Violence Strategy, which is an implementing tool for the 2016 *White Paper on Safety and Security* with the primary objective of addressing the root causes of crime and violence through ‘whole of government and whole of society approach to crime and violence prevention in the country’.

The balanced yet independent approach in the functioning of the SAPS, Independent Police Investigative Directorate (IPID) and Civilian Secretariat for Police Service (CSPS) will contribute positively in the fight against crime. The three institutions will be forever be encouraged to operate independently of each other when responding to their respective legislative mandates.

While CSPS is providing policy advice and strategic oversight, the IPID is

a significant watchdog, in ensuring that the SAPS constitutional mandate is realised. In this regard, the IPID plays a critical role in contributing towards the improvement in police conduct by engaging in station lectures across all provinces.

The National Police Commissioner answers directly to the Minister of Police. Entities reporting to the Minister of Police are the:

- CSPA
- IPID
- Private Security Industry Regulatory Authority (PSIRA)
- SAPS.

Civilian Secretariat for Police

The CSPA was established in terms of the CSPA Act of 2011 and Section 208 of the Constitution of the Republic of South Africa of 1996, which provides for the establishment of a civilian secretariat for the police service to function under the direction of the Minister of Police.

In terms of the Act, the secretariat's mandate is to conduct civilian oversight of the police service and provide policy and strategic support to the Minister, including administrative support in relation to his international obligations. The Act also mandates responsibility on the secretariat to monitor the implementation of the Domestic Violence Act of 1998 by the SAPS.

The CSPA is mandated to perform, amongst others, the following:

- Providing the Minister with policy advice and research support;
- Developing departmental policy through qualitative and evidence-based research;
- Providing civilian oversight of the Police Service through monitoring and evaluating overall police performance;
- Mobilising role-players, stakeholders and partners outside the department through engagements on crime prevention and other policing matters; and
- Providing other support services to the Minister in pursuit of achieving his/her mandate.

Assessing the conduct and performance of the police service is central to the department's work. The department does this by monitoring the police service's management of public complaints and the implementation of recommendations from the IPID.

As part of its efforts to transform and improve the performance of the police service's management of gender-based crimes, the department will aim to compile and ensure that the Secretary for the Police Service approves two reports per year over the medium term on the compliance and implementation of the Domestic Violence Act of 1998 and provide recommendations.

Over the medium term, the department planned to continue focusing on encouraging community participation in the fight against crime through facilitating events such as izimbizo and public participation programmes; developing

policies and legislation for the police sector; and assessing and monitoring the performance of the police service, for example, its implementation of recommendations from the IPID and monitoring its compliance with the legal prescripts affecting its work.

The department planned to develop or finalise six Bills over the medium term, including the SAPS Amendment Bill, the IPID Amendment Bill, the Criminal Law (Forensic Procedures) Amendment Bill, and the Firearms Control Amendment Bill.

Independent Police Investigative Directorate

The IPID exercises its functions in accordance with the IPID Act of 2011. The Act gives effect to the provisions of Section 206(6) of the Constitution, which provides for the establishment of an independent police complaints body that must investigate any alleged misconduct of, or offence committed by, a member of the police service.

The thrust of the directorate's work is to investigate serious and priority crimes allegedly committed by members of the SAPS and the Municipal Police Services.

The Act grants the directorate an extended mandate and changes the focus of the directorate's work from a complaints-driven organisation to one that prioritises investigations. It also places stringent obligations on the SAPS and the Municipal Police Services to report matters that must be investigated by the directorate, and ensures that disciplinary recommendations made by the directorate are implemented.

Over the medium term, the directorate will focus on improving the quality of its investigations and increasing access to its services. It will prioritise investigations into violence against women and people from other vulnerable groups. As the directorate pursues this focus, it will place greater emphasis on efficiently managing its number of personnel in line with its budget allocation.

As part of the focus on cases involving police brutality towards vulnerable groups and expanding its national footprint to facilitate access to services, the directorate plans to partner with provincial departments of community safety in Gauteng, KwaZulu-Natal and Western Cape to establish regional and district offices. These partnerships will mainly involve sharing office space, data and information; collaborating on investigations; and monitoring police performance.

In June 2021, IPID launched the Access and Awareness Rural Strategy, which is aimed at improving accessibility to IPID services and strengthening relations with stakeholders in rural areas. IPID continues to establish new offices in other provinces.

Private Security Industry Regulatory Authority

The PSIRA was established in terms of Section 2 of the Private Security Industry Regulation Act of 2001, which replaced the Security Officers Act of 1987. The authority is mandated to regulate the private security industry, and exercise

control over the practice of the occupation of security service providers in the public and national interest, as well as in the interest of the private security industry itself.

South African Police Service

The SAPS derives its powers and functions from section 205 of the Constitution and from the SAPS Act of 1995. This legislation regulates the police service in terms of its core functions, which are to prevent, investigate and combat crime; maintain public order; protect and secure the inhabitants of South Africa and their property; and uphold and enforce the law.

The National Commissioner is the Accounting Officer of the SAPS. Deputy National Commissioners (under whom the divisions and components of the SAPS fall) and provincial commissioners (under whom the cluster and station commanders fall) report to the National Commissioner.

The SAPS's policing objectives, in accordance with the provisions of Section 205 of the Constitution, are to:

- prevent, combat and investigate crime;
- maintain public order;
- protect and secure the inhabitants of South Africa and their property; and
- uphold and enforce the law.

The vision of the SAPS is to create a safe and secure environment for all people in South Africa. The mission of the SAPS is to:

- prevent and combat anything that may threaten the safety and security of any community;
- investigate any crimes that threaten the safety and security of any community;
- ensure offenders are brought to justice; and
- participate in efforts to address the root causes of crime.

Over the medium term, the department planned to focus on improving community safety, reducing violence against women and children, and combating organised crime.

Improving community safety

Safety within communities is dependent on mobilising all sectors of society to ensure coordinated crime prevention interventions and the strategic deployment of resources.

To this end, over the period ahead, the department will continue to implement initiatives such as the “community in blue” concept and the safer cities framework, which are key elements in the community policing strategy.

The implementation of government's district development model is also key in promoting integrated planning across all spheres of government and improving community safety.

Reducing violence against women and children

The Gender-based Violence (GBV) and Sexual Offences Action Plan remains central to the department's efforts to reduce violence and reported contact crimes against women and children. In implementing the plan over the medium term, the department will prioritise providing capacity to the family violence, child protection and sexual offences units to ensure that they have enough personnel to respond to cases effectively.

To ensure that there are appropriate interventions in place – including prevention and awareness programmes, that personnel are adequately trained, and that police stations have GBV desks – the department will also aim to develop an action plan that focuses on the 30 police stations with the highest number of reported crimes against women and children.

A total of 1 017 police stations have established designated Victim-Friendly Rooms (VFRs) to enable the victim to make a statement in private. It is particularly important for victims who experienced intimate violence (such as sexual offences, domestic violence and child abuse) and other traumatised victims, to be able to make their statement privately, to promote unhindered communication regarding their cases. Where there are no designated VFRs, alternative arrangements are made to take statements in private.

Other than VFRs at police stations, VFRs at other police facilities such as contact points and Family Violence, Child Protection and Sexual Offences offices are being used. The SAPS has a multi-year plan for the establishment of designated VFRs at the remainder of the police stations that currently do not have designated VFRs, until 2025.

Sunnyside; Soshanguve; Mankweng; Lomanyaneng; Willowvale; Deneysville; Gugulethu; Mitchell's Plain; KwaDukuza and Tonga police stations were identified for a pilot project "Drop outs/Children Living or Working on the Streets" where hotspot areas will be identified and joint interventions will be conducted, aimed at reducing crimes committed by or against children.

Combating organised crime

Over the period ahead, the Directorate for Priority Crime Investigation, supported by the detective services and crime intelligence units, will continue to focus on the implementation of an integrated approach to ensure the effective prevention and investigation of fraud, corruption, and organised and economic crimes.

With the NPA, these units will work to improve, by 2024/25, the quality of investigations to increase the percentage of trial-ready case dockets for serious corruption per year in the public and private sectors to 70% per cent.

The promulgation of the Cybercrimes Act of 2020 places an obligation on the department to ensure its implementation, in consultation with relevant role players and stakeholders in the public and private sectors.

Over the medium term, the department will develop an implementation plan for the Act that outlines its phased implementation.

Section 149(2)(a) of the Firearms Control Act of 2000, provides that any firearm, firearm part and or ammunition forfeited to the state must be destroyed by the state, within six months of the date of forfeiture or after all possible appeals have been noted. A total of 51 232 firearms were destroyed, 24 901, on 8 July 2021 and 26 331, on 10 March 2022.

DEFENCE

The Department of Defence (DOD) derives its mandate from Section 200 of the Constitution; the Defence Act of 2002, as amended by the Defence Amendment Act of 2010; the 1996 *White Paper on Defence*; and the 2015 South African Defence Review. The department is required to provide, manage, prepare and employ defence capabilities that are commensurate with the needs of South Africa.

Over the medium term, the department will focus on sustaining South Africa's defence capabilities, safeguarding the country's borders and territorial integrity, supporting peace on the continent, and providing support to the SAPS when required to ensure national security and internal stability.

To sustain South Africa's defence capabilities and rejuvenate the South African National Defence Force (SANDF) into one that is young and deployable, the department will implement various human resource reforms over the medium term.

These include reducing the number of personnel in the department from 73 153 in 2021/22 to 72 597 in 2024/25, as older personnel exit, and reducing the number of reserve force person days from 2.6 million in 2021/22 to two million in 2024/25; recruiting military skills development system personnel only every alternate year; and capping all discretionary allowances.

South Africa's national security hinges on the stability, unity and prosperity of the African continent, particularly the Southern African Development Community (SADC) region. As such, the department will continue to participate in operations to support peace in the Democratic Republic of the Congo and northern Mozambique as part of the SADC standby force. These deployments will also assist the department in achieving 100% compliance with its SADC standby force pledge and external operations.

South Africa has a duty to safeguard its borders against the possibility of transnational crime, international crime syndicates and cartels, the illegal flow of undocumented migrants, and illicit economic activities. In fulfilling these duties over the medium-term period, the department will continue to deploy 15 landward subunits along South Africa's borders with Zimbabwe, Eswatini, Mozambique, Lesotho, Botswana and Namibia.

The public unrest in July 2021 highlighted the need to strengthen law-enforcement agencies, including the SANDF, to ensure they are equipped to respond quickly to such incidents. To this end, the department plans to set up a rapid response capability unit, which will support the South African Police

Service, when needed, with a brigade of between 2 000 and 5 000 soldiers comprising paratroopers and members of the South African Air Force and South African Military Health Service.

Internal support

In July 2021, the SANDF deployed about 15 000 members to support the SAPS to quell civil unrest, and restore law and order, in some parts of KwaZulu-Natal and Gauteng. Properties and businesses were damaged and looted. The target areas of Operation Proper were malls and businesses that were damaged and looted.

In addition to contributing to African Peace Missions, the SANDF has among other projects, assisted the North West Province with health services, the Department of Water and Sanitation with the Vaal River clean-up project, the National Disaster Management Centre during the Coronavirus Disease 2019 pandemic and by mid-2022, it was still involved in the KwaZulu-Natal flood relief efforts.

DEPARTMENT OF MILITARY VETERANS (DMV)

The DMV derives its mandate from the Military Veterans Act of 2011, which requires it to provide national policy and standards on socioeconomic support to military veterans and their dependants, including benefits and entitlements to help realise a dignified, unified, empowered and self-sufficient community of military veterans.

Acknowledging the contribution of military veterans to the creation of South Africa's democracy has the potential to deepen social cohesion and national unity while redressing the inequities of the past. As such, over the medium term, the department will continue to focus on providing to military veterans and their dependants key benefits such as housing; health care; and education, training and skills development programmes.

The department planned to deliver 1 315 newly built houses to eligible beneficiaries over the medium-term period and increase the number of veterans with access to health care services from 19 700 to 20 700.

The department planned to continue ensuring that the number of bursaries provided to military veterans and their dependants remains at 3 500 in each year of the medium term. If necessary, it will refer students previously funded by the department to the National Student Financial Aid Scheme as part of state-subsidised higher education.

Over the medium term, the department planned to reposition its empowerment and skills development programme. This will be achieved by focusing on developing the skills of military veterans in areas such as road maintenance, plumbing and farming. To this end, the department will enter into memorandums of understanding with various institutions such as the South African National Roads Agency, the DOD and various sector education and training authorities.

The DMV will also ensure that military veterans and their dependants participate in government programmes that create jobs, business opportunities and encourage entrepreneurship. As such, over the medium period, the department planned to provide 3 000 military veterans with access to relevant training and skills development.

Armaments Corporation of South Africa (Armcor)

Armcor is the acquisition agency for the DOD. Renowned for its acquisition expertise, Armcor has enhanced and expanded its service offering to the DOD as well as to stakeholders across the African Continent in line with its vision to be the premier defence technology and acquisition service provider for the South African Government and our allies on the African continent and the world.

To maintain competitiveness, the corporation aims to acquire capital assets such as armoured vehicles and helicopters in an economically viable manner. The corporation will also focus on providing support to the local defence industry, ensuring that the SANDF receives quality equipment to fulfil its mandate.

Denel

Denel operates in the military aerospace and landward defence environment, and provides strategic defence equipment. The company's broad focus over the medium term will be on restructuring, which entails optimising its cost structure and implementing its new operating business model to better position it for future sustainability.

The new operating model reduces Denel's structure from six core business units to three – engineering, manufacturing, and maintenance and overhaul. This change will not only result in decreased expenditure, but in the improved allocation of critical resources. It will also require that the company accelerate its disposal of non-core assets and businesses, improve supply chain policies, and align its IT infrastructure with its new organisational structure.

Castle Control Board

The Castle Control Board primarily derives its mandate from the Castle Management Act of 1993, which requires the board to preserve and protect the military and cultural heritage of the Castle of Good Hope, and to optimise its tourism potential and public accessibility. Aspects of the board's mandate are also derived from the Defence Endowment Property and Account Act of 1922, and the National Heritage Resources Act of 1999.

As part of its revenue optimisation strategy, over the medium term, the board aims to unlock the heritage tourism potential of the Castle of Good Hope and increase its accessibility to the broader public.

Intelligence services

The mandate of the State Security Agency (SSA) is to provide government with

intelligence on domestic and foreign threats or potential threats to national stability, the constitutional order, and the safety and well-being of the people of South Africa. This allows the government to implement policies to deal with potential threats and to better understand existing threats and thus improve their policies.

The agency focuses on matters of national interest including terrorism, sabotage, subversion, espionage and organised crime. It also conducts vetting for all government departments in line with its counterintelligence mandate to ensure secure conditions to enable departments and key state entities to do their work.

By mid-2022, the General Intelligence Laws Amendment Bill was finalised and the roadmap for its submission to Parliament in September 2022 was presented to the Joint Standing Committee on Intelligence. This Bill will enable the establishment of a domestic arm of the service to focus on Counter-Intelligence and Domestic Intelligence mandate, the establishment of a Foreign Service to focus on foreign intelligence gathering and the reestablishment of the South African National Academy of Intelligence, to focus on Intelligence training as a critical element of skills development and capacity building.

The Intelligence Officer Development Programme (IODP) will be used to capacitate fit-for-purpose intelligence officers with the requisite competencies (knowledge, skills, and attitudes) based on eleven fields. The IODP was developed as an internship programme and seeks to provide training to candidate intelligence officers, commonly known as cadets.

The SSA comprises the:

- Domestic Branch (formerly the NIA)
- Foreign Branch (formerly the SASS)
- South African National Academy of Intelligence
- National Communications Centre
- Office for Interception Centres
- Electronic Communications Security (Pty) Ltd.



Official Guide to **SOUTH AFRICA** 2021/22

PROVINCES



South Africa has nine provinces, which vary considerably in size. The smallest is tiny and crowded Gauteng, a highly urbanised region, and the largest the vast, arid and empty Northern Cape, which takes up almost a third of South Africa's total land area.

Each province has its own Legislature, Premier and Executive Council. The country has common boundaries with Namibia, Botswana and Zimbabwe, while Mozambique and Eswatini lie to the north-east.

Completely enclosed by South African territory in the south-east is the mountain kingdom of Lesotho. South Africa has three capitals:

- **Cape Town**, in the City of Cape Town Metropolitan Municipality, Western Cape, is the legislative capital and is where the country's Parliament is found.
- **Bloemfontein**, in Mangaung Metropolitan Municipality, Free State, is the judicial capital and home to the Supreme Court of Appeal.
- **Pretoria**, in the City of Tshwane Metropolitan Municipality, Gauteng, is the administrative capital, and the ultimate capital of the country. It is home to the Union Buildings and a large proportion of the Public Service.

Eastern Cape

The Eastern Cape, lying on the south-eastern South African coast, is a region of great natural beauty, particularly the rugged cliffs, rough seas and dense green bush of the stretch known as the Wild Coast. In the Eastern Cape, various floral habitats meet. Along the coast, the northern tropical forests intermingle with the more temperate woods of the south. The province is serviced by airports situated in Gqeberha (formerly Port Elizabeth), East London, Mthatha and Bhisho.

In 2021, Aspen invested R3,3 billion in their Gqeberha Plant to produce vaccines for Africa. This investment created 1 775 jobs in the province, of which 52% benefitted women. Siemens also invested R80 million in a 100-bed modular hospital in Cecilia Makiwane Hospital.

The Eastern Cape Parks and Tourism Agency (ECPTA) continues to capitalise on the province's potential and attract a greater market share of domestic tourists to the Province. Some of the strategies being employed, include tracking and profiling tourists needs and their perception about the province.

The top 15 iconic tourist destinations have been digitised and are available on the virtual platforms, where potential tourists could virtually tour them.

The province has since renamed a number of government facilities and places after the legends who fought against apartheid:

- The Bhisho State House is now Lillian Diedericks House, (Bhisho), Lillian Diedericks Municipal Building.
- In the Nelson Mandela Metro, the Brister House has been renamed after Mama Lillian Diedericks, Port Elizabeth Airport to Dawid Stuurman Airport and East London Airport to King Phalo Airport.

Capital: Bhisho

Principal languages:

isiXhosa	82,7%
Afrikaans	10,3%
English	3,9%

Population: 6 676 691

Percentage share of the total population: 11,1%

Area: 168 966 km²




Source: Stats SA's Mid-year population estimates of 2022 and Community Survey of 2016.

Free State

The Free State – a province of wide horizons and blue skies, farmland, mountains, goldfields and widely dispersed towns – lies in the heart of South Africa. Between the Vaal River in the north and the Orange River in the south, this immense rolling prairie stretches as far as the eye can see. Mining, particularly gold, is the biggest employer, followed by manufacturing.

The Free State also produces high-quality diamonds from its kimberlite pipes and fissures, and the country's largest deposit of bentonite is found in the Koppies district. The National Development Plan has intensified the mining potential that still exists in the goldfields region of Matjhabeng in the Lejweleputswa District as a job intervention zone. The capital, Bloemfontein, houses the Supreme Court of Appeal, a leading university and some top schools. Important towns include Welkom, Sasolburg, Odendaalsrus, Kroonstad, Parys, Phuthaditjhaba, Bethlehem. The charming village of Clarens situated in the rolling foothills of the Maluti Mountains. Some of South Africa's most valued San rock art can be found in the Free State.

Other key tourist attractions in the province include the majestic Golden Gate National Park, the annual air show in Bethlehem, the Cherry Festival in Ficksburg, and the Fauresmith International Endurance Ride equestrian event. The annual Mangaung African Cultural Festival, known as Macufe, is hosted in partnership with the Tourism Authority and the Performing Arts Centre of the Free State. The Vredefort Dome, 10 km in diameter, is on the United Nations' (UN) World Heritage Site List.

Capital: Bloemfontein

Principal languages:

Sesotho	71,9%
Afrikaans	10,9%
isiXhosa	5,7%

Population: 2 921 611

Percentage share of the total population: 4,8%

Area: 129 825 km²




Source: Stats SA's Mid-year population estimates of 2022 and Community Survey of 2016.

Gauteng

Gauteng is the smallest of South Africa's nine provinces but comprises the largest share of the South African population. Financial and business services, logistics, manufacturing, property, telecommunications and trade are some of the most important economic sectors.

The province is an integrated industrial complex with major areas of economic activity in three sub-regional areas, namely the Vaal Triangle; the East, West and Central Rand, and Pretoria. Johannesburg houses the Johannesburg Stock Exchange Limited, the largest securities exchange in Africa. Most overseas visitors enter South Africa via OR Tambo International Airport. Pretoria is the administrative capital of South Africa and home to the Union Buildings.

Capital: Johannesburg

Principal languages:

IsiZulu	23,0%
Afrikaans	10,1%
Sesotho	12,7%
English	11,3%

Population: 16 098 571

Percentage share of the total population: 26,6%

Area: 18 178 km²



Source: Stats SA's Mid-year population estimates of 2022 and Community Survey of 2016.

KwaZulu-Natal

KwaZulu-Natal, one of the country's most popular holiday destinations, is the province with the second largest population. This verdant region includes South Africa's lush subtropical east coast. Washed by the warm Indian Ocean, it stretches from Port Edward in the south, and northwards to the Mozambique boundary.

In addition to the magnificent coastline, there is the sweeping savanna in the east, and the majestic Drakensberg mountain range in the west that offers some of the country's most awe-inspiring landscapes. A vast sweep of basalt summits and buttresses was formally granted World Heritage status in November 2000 and renamed uKhahlamba-Drakensberg Park.

Visitors can enter the province through the King Shaka International Airport at La Mercy, north of Durban or use the extensive national road network. There are also two major harbours – the port of Durban, which is one of the busiest in Africa, and Richards Bay, which is an important coal-export harbour. There are several tertiary institutions of learning, including the University of KwaZulu-Natal, University of Zululand, Mangosuthu University of Technology and Durban University of Technology. KwaZulu-Natal is the only province with a monarchy specifically provided for in the Constitution of the Republic of South Africa of 1996.

Capital: Pietermaritzburg

Principal languages:

isiZulu 82,5%

English 12,5%

Afrikaans 1,0%

Population: 11 538 325

Percentage share of the total population: 19,0%

Area: 94 361 km²



Source: Stats SA's Mid-year population estimates of 2022 and Community Survey of 2016.

Limpopo

Limpopo, South Africa's northernmost province, borders onto Mozambique, Zimbabwe and Botswana, making it the ideal entrance to Africa. Named after the Limpopo River that flows along its northern border, the province is rich in wildlife, spectacular scenery and a wealth of historical and cultural treasures.

This province is in the Savanna Biome, an area of mixed grassland and trees, which is generally known as bushveld. The province's natural resources include more than 50 provincial reserves, as well as several private game reserves. The largest section of the Kruger National Park is situated along the eastern boundary of Limpopo with Mozambique.

Capital: Polokwane

Principal languages:

Sepedi 56,0%

Tshivenda 17,1%

Xitsonga 16,6%

Population: 5 941 439

Percentage share of the total population: 9,8%

Area: 125 755 km²



Source: Stats SA's Mid-year population estimates of 2022 and Community Survey of 2016.

Mpumalanga

Mpumalanga means Place where the sun rises. Owing to its spectacular scenic beauty and abundance of wildlife, the province is one of South Africa's major tourist destinations. Mpumalanga falls mainly within the Grassland Biome. The escarpment and the Lowveld form a transitional zone between this grassland area and the Savanna Biome.

The area has a network of excellent roads and railway connections, making it highly accessible. Mpumalanga is also served by a number of small airports, such as the Kruger Mpumalanga International Airport. Mbombela is the capital of the province and the administrative and business centre of the Lowveld. Other important towns are eMalahleni, Standerton, Piet Retief, Malalane, Ermelo, Barberton and Sabie.

Large-scale manufacturing occurs especially in the northern Highveld area, particularly chrome-alloy and steel manufacturing. The Barberton Makhonjwa Mountains were added to the UN Educational, Scientific and Cultural Organization’s prestigious World Heritage List in July 2018, becoming the 10th World Heritage Site for South Africa.

The site comprises 40% of the Barberton Greenstone Belt, one of the world’s oldest geological structures. The Barberton Makhonjwa Mountains represent the best-preserved succession of volcanic and sedimentary rock dating back 3,25 to 3,6 billion years.

Capital: Mbombela			
Principal languages:			
Siswati	29,1%		
isiZulu	28,8%		
Xitsonga	9,6%		
isiNdebele	10,1%		
Population:	4 720 497		
Percentage share of the total population: 7,8%			
Area:	76 495 km ²		

Source: Stats SA’s Mid-year population estimates of 2022 and Community Survey of 2016.

Northern Cape

The Northern Cape is the largest province in South Africa. However, it Cape remains the province with the smallest share of the South African population. The province is noted for its San rock art, diamond diggings, 4X4 safaris and the Kgalagadi Transfrontier Park.

It is a vast stretch of semi-desert land. The province is renowned for its spectacular display of spring flowers, which, for a short period every year, attracts thousands of tourists. Sutherland hosts the southern hemisphere’s largest astronomical observatory, the multinational-sponsored Southern African Large Telescope. The Northern Cape is one of two sites to host the Square Kilometre Array radio-telescope (better known as the SKA Project), the largest and most advanced radio telescope in the world.

Among many other benefits, the province’s tourism and hospitality industry is profiting from the project, as scientists and other interested parties are flooding into the town of Carnarvon. Electrical power generation presents an opportunity for greater economic diversification and growth in the province.

Capital: Kimberley

Principal languages:

Afrikaans 56,8%

Setswana 33,4%

Population: 1 308 734

Percentage share of the total population: 2,2%

Area: 372 889 km²



Source: Stats SA's Mid-year population estimates of 2022 and Community Survey of 2016.

North West

North West lies in the north of South Africa, on the Botswana border, fringed by the Kalahari desert in the west, Gauteng to the east, and the Free State to the south. Sun City, the Pilanesberg National Park, the Madikwe Game Reserve, the Cradle of Humankind Site, the Taung Heritage Site, the De Wildt Cheetah and Wildlife Trust and the Lesedi Cultural Village are some of the tourist attractions.

Some of the largest cattle herds in the world are found at Stellaland near Vryburg, which explains why this area is often referred to as the Texas of South Africa. Marico is also cattle country. North West is South Africa's major producer of white maize. Mining contributes immensely to North West's economy and the South African mining industry.

It is known as the Platinum Province due to its abundant mineral riches of platinum, chrome and the platinum group metals. It is also home to a strong dimension stone sector, due to the riches of its slate, marble and granite deposits. The Rustenburg and Brits districts produce 94% of the country's platinum. In addition to granite, marble, fluorspar and diamonds, the province also produces a quarter of South Africa's gold.

Capital: Mahikeng

Principal languages:

Setswana 71,5%

Afrikaans 8,96%

isiXhosa 5,51%

Population: 4 186 984

Percentage share of the total population: 6,9%

Area: 104 882 km²



Source: Stats SA's Mid-year population estimates of 2022 and Community Survey of 2016.

Western Cape

Situated on the south-western tip of Africa, the Western Cape with its wide beaches and breath-taking scenery, complemented by a rich variety of cultures, historical landmarks, world-class restaurants and entertainment, is a world-famous tourist destination. Table Mountain, the Cape winelands, Robben Island

and the Kirstenbosch Botanical Gardens are among the province's most popular tourist attractions.

Capital: Cape Town

Principal languages:

Afrikaans	46,6%
isiXhosa	31,1%
English	19,6%

Population: 7 212 142

Percentage share of the total population: 11,9%

Area: 129 462 km²



Source: Stats SA's Mid-year population estimates of 2022 and Community Survey of 2016.



Official Guide to **SOUTH AFRICA**
2021/22

SCIENCE AND INNOVATION



SCIENCE AND INNOVATION

The Department of Science and Innovation (DSI) derives its mandate from the *1996 White Paper on Science and Technology*, which introduced the concept of the national system of innovation, a set of interacting organisations and policies through which South Africa creates, acquires, diffuses and puts into practice new knowledge to help achieve individual and collective goals.

A coordinated and efficient national system of innovation will help the country achieve its national development priorities by promoting change through innovation. This will enable all South Africans to enjoy the economic, socio-political and intellectual benefits of science, technology and innovation.

Over the medium term, the department planned to focus on developing human capital, ensuring the effective use of publicly funded intellectual property, implementing the national space strategy, and implementing the national integrated cyberinfrastructure system. The department will continue to work towards identifying, protecting, using and commercialising intellectual property and technology.

Over the medium-term period, this includes generating a targeted 365 knowledge products (including peer-reviewed scientific articles and applications for or the registration/granting of intellectual property rights); developing and approving 12 science, technology and innovation strategic policy directives; and developing and/or maintaining nine interventions to improve the delivery of government services or functions.

The **National Space Strategy** is intended to ensure, through activities such as Earth observation, navigation and meteorological monitoring, that South Africa captures a reasonable share of the global space market.

The **National Integrated Cyberinfrastructure System** is expected to enable the successful and sustainable implementation of national projects such as MeerKAT and the Square Kilometre Array (SKA). The MeerKAT telescope, for example, is expected to add 20 antennae to its current array of 64 at a projected cost of R800 million over the period ahead.

The department continues to modernise existing sectors such as mining through support for research and development (R&D), both to ensure a safer working environment for miners and to increase the lifespan of mining in the country. In addition, we are also playing a vital role in beneficiation of the mineral's economy.

Through the **South African Mining Extraction Research, Development and Innovation** (SAMERDI) strategy, the department has invested money towards the modernisation of the African mining industry. In partnership with Anglo American Platinum, Bambili Energy and ENGIE in October, 2021, the department has initiated a feasibility study on the Hydrogen Valley and identified nine (9) catalytic projects across the mobility, industrial and building sectors in the first phase of the hydrogen economy programme.

By implementing the **South African Hydrogen Valley** corridor, which covers the Johannesburg Hub, the Mogalakwena/Limpopo and the Durban/Richards Bay

areas, the project has the potential to create 14 000 to 30 000 direct and indirect jobs per year by 2030. The launch of the world's biggest hydrogen truck by Anglo American Platinum at the Mogalakwena Mine in Limpopo on 6 May 2022, was an indication of the potential that South Africa has become a significant global player in the Hydrogen Economy.

In line with the DSI's commitment to supporting existing industries to meet South Africa's climate mitigation targets, the department was expected to further develop technologies to reduce emissions from coal-fired boilers in the cement, energy, steel, and paper and pulp industries through the CoalCO₂-X project.

Hydrogen Society Roadmap (HSRM)

To support innovation in South Africa's energy markets, the DSI launched the HSRM in February 2022 to unlock the potential of new sources of clean energy to facilitate a just transition from a carbon-intensive to a carbon neutral economy.

The South African hydrogen economy journey started in 2007 when Cabinet approved the national hydrogen and fuel cells research, development and innovation Hydrogen South Africa Strategy (HySA Strategy). The DSI is implementing the HySA Strategy through the 15-year HySA Programme.

The HySA Programme, on its 13th year of implementation in 2022, has made significant contribution towards the creation of a Hydrogen Economy in South Africa. This has been achieved through the creation of knowledge, technological expertise and human resources development.

During the 2019/20 financial year, the HySA Programme underwent its second five-year review, which recommended the development of an overarching HSRM.

In September 2020, the DSI initiated a process to develop the HSRM in collaboration with key relevant departments as well as the private sector and civil society through a consultative process, which culminated in a stakeholder collaboration workshop on 14 July 2021. This led to the Cabinet approval of the HSRM on 14 September 2021.

The implementation of this roadmap is expected to support inclusive growth and assist government to reduce unemployment, poverty and inequality.

In South Africa, hydrogen is extensively used in the chemical and fuel-refining sectors, but it is produced mainly from non-renewable sources such as coal and natural gas. With a sound foundation, hydrogen is well positioned to become a game changer in the country's aspirations to move towards a net-zero carbon economy.

World Science Forum (WSF)

South Africa was the first country in Africa to host the WSF, from 6 to 9 December 2022, in Cape Town. The WSF is a biennial international conference series on global science policy which brings together leading scientists, researchers, private sector players, civil society and global media to discuss the challenges facing science and societies in the 21st century.

Entities

Academy of Science of South Africa (ASSAf)

The ASSAf was established in terms of the ASSAf Act of 2001, as amended, to promote outstanding achievements in all fields of scientific inquiry, recognise excellence, and provide evidence-based scientific advice to government and other stakeholders.

Over the medium term, the academy aimed to achieve enhanced national capacity to produce and publish research, provide evidence-based policy advice to government, and increase the quality and visibility of South African research publications.

Council for Scientific and Industrial Research (CSIR)

The CSIR was established in 1945 and is governed in terms of the Scientific Research Council Act of 1988. The council's overarching and continuous focus area is to foster industrial and scientific development in the national interest.

This is achieved through conducting multidisciplinary research and providing technological innovation to improve the ability of the state to deliver basic services with the broader objective of reducing inequality.

Human Sciences Research Council (HSRC)

The HSRC was established in 1968 to undertake, promote and coordinate research in the human and social sciences. The council is mandated to initiate, undertake and foster strategic, basic and applied research in human sciences; and address developmental challenges by gathering, analysing and publishing relevant data, especially through projects linked to collaborative programmes oriented towards the public sector.

The council's research outputs are widely disseminated to support policy development at all levels of government. As such, over the medium term, the council aimed to continue focusing on producing research that serves the public; contributing to good governance and public service delivery; helping to address the challenges of poverty, inequality and inclusive development, and building the capacity of scholars and researchers.

National Research Foundation (NRF)

The NRF was established in terms of the NRF Act of 1998, as amended. In terms of this legislation, the foundation is mandated to support research through funding, the development of human resources, and the provision of research facilities to enable knowledge creation, innovation and development in all fields of science and technology. It is also mandated to promote indigenous knowledge.

The NRF supports approximately research-productive and internationally recognised researchers. The productivity and quality of the knowledge produced by researchers who are funded by the foundation has been significant over the past five years. In this regard, over the medium term, the NRF planned to continue

driving excellence underpinned by the strength of the South African science system with a strong emphasis on transformation, innovation and sustainability.

South African Council for Natural Scientific Professions (SACNASP)

The SACNASP is the legislated regulatory body for natural science practitioners in South Africa. The natural sciences encompass a wide range of scientific fields covering all of the basic sciences and many of their applied derivatives. Its mission is to establish, direct, sustain and ensure a high level of professionalism and ethical conscience amongst its scientists.

South African National Space Agency (SANSA)

The SANSA was established in terms of the South African National Space Agency Act of 2008, as amended, to promote the peaceful use of space, foster international cooperation in space-related activities, and facilitate the creation of an environment conducive to space technology and industrial development.

In addition to continuing its focus on these priorities, over the medium term, the agency aimed to focus on broadening the suite of products and services available in the space sector, and contributing to promoting socio-economic development across Africa.

SANSA contributes significantly to the national economy and job creation through various projects such as satellite development and testing for various space missions, big data platforms like data visualisation centres, the activation of a satellite-based augmentation system over southern Africa, and the development of the required human talent.

More than 30 government departments and entities use national geospatial data for planning, monitoring and decision-making. South Africa, through SANSA, has been selected as one of two International Civil Aviation Organization (ICAO) designated Regional Space Weather Centres.

South Africa launched the state-of-the-art SANSA 24/7 Regional Space Weather Centre in Hermanus in the Western Cape in November 2022. The space weather capability is a direct response to the country's good safety track record that led to the ICAO selecting SANSA as one of the two regional centres to provide space weather services, including solar storm forecasts and warnings to the global aviation sector.

The DSI has also launched three locally produced nanosatellites, as part of South Africa's new Maritime Domain Awareness Satellite constellation. The high-tech satellites will detect, identify and monitor vessels in near real-time in support of the South African maritime domain awareness strategy.

Square Kilometre Array

The South African and Australian governments are co-signatories to co-host the SKA Observatory array telescopes and associated infrastructures over the period 2021-2030. Through the SKA Observatory, South Africa will be producing a whole new generation of science and scientists, many of whom are being trained

in the country. South African companies and the South African Radio Astronomy Observatory will benefit immensely from the rolling out of this infrastructure which includes the building of the SKA Exploratorium in Carnarvon in the Northern Cape.

The initiative is expected to boost science awareness and outreach, stimulate science tourism in the region and create employment. In particular, the DSI will also focus on ensuring the production of more-black and women scientists and specialists on this front. The MeerKAT telescope, built by South Africans, does great scientific work and will continue to do so until it is fully integrated into the SKA in the next five to seven years.

Technology Innovation Agency (TIA)

The TIA Act of 2008, as amended, mandates the agency to serve as a key institutional intervention to bridge the innovation gap between R&D outcomes from higher education institutions, science councils, public entities, and private companies.

This with the purpose of intensifying the effect of technological innovation in the economy. Over the medium term, the agency aimed to continue focusing on bridging the innovation gap between R&D goals, and supporting technologies within the national system of innovation.

Research and science bodies

South African Bureau of Standards (SABS)

The SABS was established as a statutory body in terms of the Standards Act of 2008 and is part of South Africa's standardisation, quality assurance, accreditation and metrology technical infrastructure institutions.

The bureau is mandated to develop, promote and maintain South African national standards; render conformity assessment services; and promote the quality of commodities, products and services. Its overarching objective is to protect the integrity of the South African market, protect consumers, create a competitive advantage, and facilitate access by South Africans to local and international markets.

Over the medium term, the bureau aimed to focus on revitalising testing operations and facilities in key targeted sectors. The bureau also plans to roll out a local content verification programme for key sectors designated for local procurement.

National Intellectual Property Management Office (NIPMO)

The NIPMO is mandated to ensure that intellectual property from publicly financed R&D is identified, protected, utilised and commercialised for the benefit of the people of South Africa, whether it be for social, economic, military or any other benefit.

Agricultural Research Council (ARC)

The ARC was established by the Agricultural Research Act of 1990, which mandates the council to: conduct R&D, and effect the transfer of technology in the agriculture sector; contribute to a better quality of life; and facilitate and ensure natural resource conservation.

Mintek

Mintek's mandate, as set out in the Mineral Technology Act of 1989, is to maximise the value derived from South Africa's mineral resources through, among other things, R&D, technology transfer, and the creation of an enabling environment for the establishment and expansion of mineral industries.

To this end, Mintek develops appropriate, innovative technology for transfer to industry, and provides the industry with test work, consultancy, analytical and mineralogical services.

Council for Geoscience (CGS)

The CGS was established in terms of the Geoscience Act of 1993 to promote the search for and exploitation of any mineral in South Africa. It is mandated to generate, compile, curate and publish world-class geoscience knowledge products, provide geoscience-related services to the South African public and industry, and render advisory services related to geohazards and geo-environmental pollution.

Over the medium term, the council was expected to continue focusing on the geoscience national mapping programme, the data migration and digitisation programme, the procurement of key geoscientific equipment and infrastructure, and the improvement of high-quality research and analysis.

The high-quality geoscience data provided by geological mapping for exploration and mining is expected to increase exploration activities, resulting in economic growth. This information is also required to assess the environmental impact of mining activities and shale gas development.

South African Medical Research Council (SAMRC)

The SAMRC conducts and funds health research and medical innovation in terms of the amended SAMRC Act of 1991. The council is mandated to contribute to improved health and quality of life for the South African population by providing evidence-based recommendations to various policy-makers through health research, development, technology transfer and capacity development.

National Health Laboratory Service (NHLS)

The NHLS was established in terms of the National Health Laboratory Service Act of 2000. The entity operates more than 230 laboratories in nine provinces and is the sole provider of training for pathologists and medical scientists, provides comprehensive and affordable pathology services to more than 80% of the South

African population, and plays a significant role in the diagnosis and monitoring of HIV and TB.

The entity also houses the National Institute for Communicable Diseases (NICD), which is internationally renowned for its role in the surveillance and monitoring of communicable diseases. It provides expertise to southern African countries on outbreaks such as Ebola, listeriosis and, most recently, COVID-19.

South African National Energy Development Institute (SANEDI)

The SANEDI was established in terms of the National Energy Act of 2008, and is listed as a schedule 3A public entity in terms of the Public Finance Management Act of 1999). Its mandate is to direct, monitor and conduct applied energy R&D, and demonstrate and deploy specific measures to promote the uptake of green energy and energy efficiency in South Africa.

Water Research Commission (WRC)

The WRC was established in terms of the Water Research Act of 1971. It is mandated to conduct research in the water sector by determining needs and priorities for research; promoting coordination, cooperation and communication in the area of water research development; stimulating and funding water research; promoting the effective transfer of information and technology, and enhancing knowledge and building capacity in the water sector.

South African Environmental Observation Network (SAEON)

The SAEON is a research facility that establishes and maintains nodes (environmental observatories, field stations or sites) linked by an information management network to serve as research and education platforms for long-term studies of ecosystems that will provide for incremental advances in the understanding of ecosystems and the ability to detect, predict and react to environmental change.

South African Astronomical Observatory (SAAO)

Founded in 1820, the SAAO is the national centre for optical and infrared astronomy in South Africa. Its primary role is to conduct fundamental research in astronomy and astrophysics by providing a world-class facility to scientists.

The SAAO also promotes astronomy and astrophysics in southern Africa, by sharing research findings and discoveries, and participating in outreach activities to enthuse citizens about physics and astronomy. The SAAO is a facility of the NRF, which operates under the DSI.

Its headquarters are in the eponymous suburb of Observatory in Cape Town, and has a dedicated research and observation station with several working telescopes, including Southern African Large Telescope, outside the Karoo town of Sutherland in the Northern Cape.

To achieve the best possible observing conditions, all of the current astronomy

operations occur in Sutherland. Historical telescopes in Cape Town are still regularly used for outreach and public events.



Official Guide to **SOUTH AFRICA** 2021/22

SOCIAL DEVELOPMENT



The Department of Social Development (DSD) provides social protection services and leads government's efforts to forge partnerships through which vulnerable individuals, groups and communities become capable and active participants in the development of themselves and society.

The social development function facilitates access to social grants and welfare services to reduce poverty and inequality, protect children, and empower women, youth and people with disabilities.

Several pieces of legislation determine the department's mandate, a number of which are under review, are the:

- **Nonprofit Organisations Act of 1997** establishes an administrative and regulatory framework within which non-profit organisations (NPOs) can conduct their affairs, and provides for their registration by the department;
- **1997 White Paper for Social Welfare** sets out the principles, guidelines, policies and programmes for developmental social welfare in South Africa;
- **1998 White Paper on Population Policy for South Africa** is aimed at promoting the sustainable development of all South Africans by integrating population issues with development planning in all spheres of government and all sectors of society;
- **Social Assistance Act of 2004** provides a legislative framework for the provision of social assistance. The Act and its regulations set out different types of grants payable, including those for social relief, and their qualifying criteria;
- **Children's Act of 2005**, as amended, gives effect to certain rights of children as contained in the Constitution of the Republic of South Africa of 1996, and sets out principles and processes relating to their care and protection;
- **Older Persons Act of 2006** is aimed at maintaining and promoting the rights, status, well-being, safety and security of older people. It provides for older people to enjoy quality services while staying with their families and in their communities for as long as possible, and to live in residential care facilities;
- **Prevention of and Treatment for Substance Abuse Act of 2008** and associated regulations provide a legal framework for the establishment, registration and monitoring of in-patient treatment centres and halfway houses.

Over the medium-term period, the department planned to focus on: providing income support to the poor and vulnerable; providing developmental social welfare services and increased access to services; supporting and monitoring the implementation of policies, legislation, norms and standards for the provision of social welfare services to children; addressing gender-based violence and femicide (GBVF), HIV and AIDS and other social ills; and building sustainable communities.

Income support to the poor and vulnerable

The social assistance programme is an important element in government's strategy to tackle poverty and inequality. This programme has proved vital in

mitigating the severe effects of the Coronavirus Disease 2019 (COVID-19) lockdown restrictions, which led to many job losses.

As the elderly population – people older than 60 – is expected to increase by 3% per year over the medium term, the number of beneficiaries who receive old-age grants is expected to increase from 3.9 million in 2021/22 to four million in 2024/25.

Similarly, as the child population is expected to increase from 20.9 million in 2021/22 to 21.3 million in 2024/25, the number of beneficiaries who receive the child support grant is set to increase from 13.3 million in 2021/22 to 13.9 million in 2024/25.

Developmental social welfare services and increased access to services

The shift of the Early Childhood Development function to the Department of Basic Education has created capacity for the department to prioritise other aspects of social welfare. Accordingly, over the medium term, the department planned to focus on developing and coordinating overarching policies, legislative frameworks, norms and standards that promote integrated, quality-driven, professional and accountable service delivery.

This includes finalising the draft *White Paper for Social Development*, amending the Older Persons Act of 2006, training social workers to render adoption services in line with the Children’s Amendment Act of 2016, and strengthening the department’s monitoring of how the Social Service Professions Act of 1978 is implemented by institutionalising the oversight role of the South African Council for Social Service Professions.

Addressing GBVF, HIV and AIDS and other social ills

The provision of psychosocial services by social service practitioners is a key contribution of the sector in the fight against GBVF, and HIV and AIDS. The department aims to address the social and structural drivers of HIV and AIDS.

Sustainable communities to reduce poverty

The DSD continues to profile vulnerable households and communities to determine their socio-economic needs and create structures and enhance capacity in communities to reduce social ills. The department supports civil-society organisations that focus on initiatives that aim to improve livelihoods.

Entities

South African Social Security Agency (SASSA)

The SASSA Act of 2004 provides for the establishment of the SASSA, the objectives of which are to ensure effective and efficient administration, management and payment of social assistance. The agency administers and pays social assistance transfers to qualifying beneficiaries. It has a large network of centres where citizens can apply for social grants.

The agency is currently able to process applications online only for the child support grant, old age grant and foster care grant. To increase efficiencies in the distribution of social grants, the agency will focus on modernising its disbursement system to extend to all grant applications. The new, automated system is expected to be complete by 2024/25.

By mid-2022, the agency's business process reengineering project, which began in 2021, was still under way. The project mainly involves mapping the agency's current operating model, developing a blueprint for staff organisational structures and capacity, and developing norms and standards for future operating procedures. The aim of the project, which is expected to be completed by the end of 2022/23, is to ensure that the agency is fit for purpose and has systems in place to improve its efficiency.

To become more customer-centric, the agency plans to consolidate its existing communications channels into a single platform. This entails the introduction of an integrated call centre to serve as a single point of contact for all incoming and outgoing communications, and provide a single view of beneficiaries and real-time access to their information.

National Development Agency (NDA)

The NDA is a schedule 3A public entity established in terms of the NDA Act of 1998. Its primary mandate is to contribute towards the eradication of poverty and its causes by granting funds to civil society organisations to implement development projects in poor communities.

To inform government's response to alleviating poverty and facilitating development, over the medium-term period, the agency will partner with research and academic institutions to produce a targeted 11 research publications and host dialogues to debate the findings, which will eventually inform policy.

Mandate

Working together with provincial departments of social development, the SASSA and the NDA, the DSD has intensified its contributions towards interventions that address the impact of poverty, inequality and unemployment by:

- continuously improving the implementation, quality, and reach of all social development services for each South African and towards the realisation of a society-wide impact;
- strengthening its fight against GBVF by means of implementing the National Strategic Plan on GBVF;
- establishing beneficial and sustainable linkages between the implementation of Social Development services and economic opportunities, particularly through creating and supporting the participation of beneficiaries in the social economy;
- continuing with the implementation of the COVID-19 Social Relief of Distress (SRD) Grant;

- ensuring that our programme implementation embodies the protection and furtherance of the dignity of our people;
- leading the formation of community-targeted and strong people-public-private civil-academic-multilateral partnerships and social compacting in areas such as tackling gangsterism, substance abuse, GBVF, and the impact of disasters, shocks and emergencies;
- expanding our support for food- and nutrition-provision interventions in pursuit of ending the pain of hunger as well as undoing the effects of malnutrition;
- implementing social development programmes through the Cabinet-adopted District Development Model;
- strengthening government's coordination and implementation mechanisms across the three spheres in service of the people; and
- stabilising and strengthening institutional governance and capacity towards meaningful programme implementation throughout the social development portfolio, in the face of the rising cost of basic food items and energy sources.

Social security

The percentage of individuals that benefited from social grants steadily increased from 12,8% in 2003 to approximately 31% between 2017 and 2019 before increasing sharply to 35,7% in 2021, according to Statistics South Africa's (Stats SA) General Household Survey of 2021. This growth was tracked closely by that of households that received at least one social grant (growing 30,8% in 2003 to 45,5% in 2019, and 50,6% in 2021).

Grant beneficiaries were most common in Eastern Cape (47,8%) and Limpopo (46,5%) and least widespread in Gauteng (23,6%) and Western Cape (26,2%). Households that received at least one type of social grant were most common in Mpumalanga (65,8%), Limpopo (65,1%), and Eastern Cape (63,3%), and least common in Gauteng (38,4%) and Western Cape (38,7%).

The SRD Grant of R350 per month was introduced in 2020 in an attempt to offset the impact of COVID-19. Nationally, 5,8% of respondents received the grant in 2021 compared to 5,3% in 2020. The highest uptake in 2021 was noted in Mpumalanga and Limpopo (both 9,5%), while the grants were least common in Western Cape (2,8%) and Gauteng (4,0%).

About 25,2% of all individuals, and 38,9% of all households in metropolitan areas received some kind of social grant (compared to 35,7% of individuals and 50,6% of households nationally). Individual grant receipt was highest in Buffalo City (35,3%) and Mangaung (32,6%) and least common in Johannesburg (24,0%) and Tshwane (25,8%).

The receipt of one or more social grants was most common for households in Buffalo City (62,2%) and Nelson Mandela Bay (48,0%) and least common in Tshwane (36,1%) and the City of Johannesburg (39,1%).

National Youth Policy (NYP)

The NYP 2020-2030, also referred to as the NYP 2030, is a cross-sectoral policy aimed at affecting positive youth development outcomes for young people at local, provincial and national levels in South Africa.

Developed by the Department of Women, Youth and Persons with Disabilities, in collaboration with multiple stakeholders and young people, the policy was developed to redress the wrongs and injustices of the past and to deal decisively with the persistent as well as new and emerging challenges they are facing. The NYP 2030 defines young people as those aged between 14 and 35.

Blind SA

Blind SA is an organisation for the blind and is governed by the blind. Situated in Johannesburg, it is aligned with other member organisations throughout South Africa. The organisation provides, among other things, study bursaries for visually impaired students for further education, Braille publications in all of South Africa's official languages, Braille training that entails writing and reading, and orientation and mobility training.

It equips blind people with the skills they need to fully and independently participate in society. This includes support in living without assistance, getting about, using technology, reading, working and socialising. All this is made possible through advocacy, the Education Committee, Braille Services, orientation and mobility services and the employment programme. It is through this, and the support of donors, that Blind SA connects blind or visually impaired South Africans with the world they live in.

South African Braille Authority (SABA)

SABA is the standard setting body for and promotes and advocates for Braille and Braille-related matters in South Africa. The non-profit organisation advocates, promotes, monitors and evaluates for the ubiquitous use of Braille through literacy and the various facets and applications.

South African National Council for the Blind (SANCB)

The SANCB is a registered non-profit and public benefit organisation established in 1929 with the core objectives of advocacy and promoting the rights of persons with visual impairments, prevention, inclusion and support. As a South African national representative body for the blind, it offers a supportive, rights driven function to its nearly 80 member member-organisations.

The presence of its community work is felt throughout its nine provincial structures in South Africa. The SANCB also lays emphasis on the prevention of blindness and in 1944 the Bureau for the Prevention of Blindness was established.

Support for the hearing impaired

The South African National Deaf Association (SANDA) is dedicated to providing quality services, ensuring public accessibility and increasing awareness of issues

affecting Deaf people at all levels in South Africa. The mandate of SANDA is to:

- build capacity in the Deaf sector;
- influence public policies;
- set the agenda for meaningful inclusive development; and
- provide comprehensive human development services that benefit Deaf people at all levels of society.

Older people

According Statistics South Africa's Mid-year population estimates of 2022, about 9,2% (5,59 million) of the population is 60 years or older. South Africa's Older Persons Act of 2006, which came into operation in 2010, recognises the importance of older persons in the country's democracy and development.

The Active Ageing Programme was introduced by the DSD in partnership with the South African Older Persons Forum to uphold the human rights of older persons and to respond to their developmental needs in South Africa as directed by the Older Persons Act of 2006 and the Madrid Plan of Action on Ageing.

Its goal is to improve the quality of life of older persons by amongst others, promoting independence, participation in various social, cultural and sporting initiatives that seek to prevent and reduce old-age related burden of diseases. This is part of the DSD's effort to build a caring society that promotes and protects the human rights of people of all ages.

Golden Games, which are part of the Active Ageing Programme, encourage senior citizens to be active and promote longer life for the aged. They participate in different sporting activities like soccer, athletics and a fun walk.



Official Guide to **SOUTH AFRICA** 2021/22

SPORT, ARTS AND CULTURE



SPORT, ARTS AND CULTURE

The Department of Sport, Arts and Culture (DSAC) is mandated to provide leadership to the sport, arts and culture sector to accelerate its transformation; oversee the development and management of sport, arts and culture in South Africa; legislate on sports participation, sports infrastructure and safety; improve South Africa's international ranking in selected sports through a partnership with the South African Sports Confederation and Olympic Committee (SASCOC); preserve, develop, protect and promote the cultural, heritage, linguistic diversity and legacy of South Africa; lead nation-building and social cohesion through social transformation; enhance archives and records management structures and systems; and promote access to information.

In its efforts to enable transformed, capable and professional sport, arts and culture sectors, over the medium term, the department will focus on: promoting and protecting heritage; creating job opportunities in the cultural and creative sector; and providing integrated and accessible sport infrastructure and events.

South African practitioners and artists who continue to raise the South African flag high, particularly on the international front, include:

- **Thuso Mbedu** – 2021 Hollywood Critic's inaugural Association Awards Winner for her performance as Cora in *Underground Railroad*, and the 2022 Independent Spirit Awards Winner for Best Female Performance in a Scripted Series.
- **Prof Pitika Ntuli** – 2021 Global Fine Arts People's Choice Award Winner.
- **DJ Black Coffee (Nkosinathi Maphumulo)** – 2022 Grammy Award Winner at its 64th annual chapter at the MGM Grand Garden Arena in Las Vegas.
- **Mandla Dube** directed a world renown "Silverton Siege", a story on the fervent offensive by MK cadres fighting for the release of Nelson Mandela. This iconic piece premiered at Sun City and was further shown in 192 countries in April 2022.

Promoting and protecting heritage

In order to expand access to knowledge and information, the department plans to build 96 new libraries, upgrade 135 community libraries and procure 310 000 library materials over the medium term.

Igniting economic growth through the cultural and creative industries

As part of the department's efforts to realise the potential of cultural and creative industries to stimulate growth and contribute to South Africa's economy, over the medium term, a targeted 900 artists will be placed in schools to teach art and 750 language bursaries will be awarded to develop qualified language practitioners.

Promoting and developing sport and recreation

Sport has the potential to bring together diverse groups and create a socially cohesive society with a common national identity. Netball South Africa to host the Netball World Cup in 2023.

Youth programmes

To mitigate high youth unemployment rate, the department supported several youth programmes. The following are amongst notable youth programmes that were supported:

- Debut Fund programme
- The Young Patriots Programme
- Artists in Schools, and
- Film.

Coronavirus Disease 2019 (COVID-19) pandemic

As part of the global community, the South African sport and creative industries were the hardest hit by the devastating COVID-19 pandemic.

Government's response through relief, grants and the Presidential Economic Stimulus Package went a long way in softening the negative impact of COVID-19. The DSAC supported athletes, artists and their organisations financially to the tune of R808 million, benefiting 59 224 artists and athletes with 37 556 jobs created and retained.

In an endeavour to reopen the sector again and guarantee livelihoods, the department initiated the "Return to Play, It is in Your Hands" campaign. The campaign's roadshow covered seven provinces, with the key objective of getting the nation to vaccinate.

Role players

Boxing South Africa (BSA)

The BSA administers professional boxing, recognises amateur boxing, creates synergy between professional and amateur boxing, and promotes interaction between associations of boxers, managers, promoters and trainers.

Netball South Africa (NSA)

The NSA is the peak governing body for the sport of netball in South Africa, which is responsible for overseeing the practice of the sport across the country. Additionally, the NSA is the managing body for the National Netball Team – the Spar Proteas. The NSA will host the Netball World Cup in Cape Town in 2023. This is a historic first for the sport in Africa.

Tennis South Africa (TSA)

The TSA is the national governing body for the sport of tennis in South Africa created to standardise rules and regulations and to promote and develop the

growth of tennis in South Africa. The not-for-profit organisation invests its proceeds to promote and develop the growth of tennis, from the grass-roots to the professional levels, and to raise funds for and on behalf of tennis players and the game of tennis within South Africa. The TSA is affiliated to both the International Tennis Federation and Confederation of African Tennis.

GolfRSA

GolfRSA is the unified body of the South African Golf Association and Women's Golf South Africa, administering, operating and providing service to amateur golf in South Africa. GolfRSA's role is to look after the interests of more than 460 golf clubs and 139 000 men, women, boy and girl club members, produce champion golfers and provide the opportunity for everyone in South Africa to experience the game of golf.

South African Institute for Drug-Free Sport (SAIDS)

The SAIDS promotes participation in sport without the use of prohibited performance enhancing substances and methods, and educates sportspeople on fair play and the harmful effects of the use of prohibited performance enhancing substances and methods.

South African Sports Confederation and Olympic Committee

SASCOC is the national multi-coded sporting body responsible for the preparation, presentation and performance of teams to all multi-coded events, namely the Olympic Games, Paralympic Games, Commonwealth Games, World Games, All Africa Games, Olympic Youth Games, Commonwealth Youth Games and Zone VI Games.

It also looks after the various national federations affiliated to it, together with the various provincial sports councils. SASCOC is responsible for the awarding for National Protea Colours to athletes/officials who have met the criteria to represent South Africa in different sporting codes and arenas. South Africa is also represented on the Association of National Olympic Committees of Africa and on the Confederation of Southern African National Olympic Committees.

World Anti-Doping Agency (WADA)

The WADA was established in 1999 as an international independent agency composed and funded equally by the sport movement and governments of the world. Its key activities include scientific research, education, development of antidoping capacities and monitoring of the World Anti-Doping Code – the document harmonising anti-doping policies in all sports and all countries.

Athletics South Africa (ASA)

ASA, which reports to the SASCOC, is the national governing body for the sport of athletics in South Africa that is recognised by World Athletics and is also a member of Confederation of African Athletics.

Mind Sports South Africa (MSSA)

The MSSA is a non-profit association affiliated to the International eSports Federation, Federation de Jeu du Mondiale, and the International Wargames Federation. Due to its membership of such international bodies, the MSSA is the sole authority for the games that it caters for in terms of the Sport and Recreation Act of 1998 (as amended).

The MSSA is responsible for the good governance and promotion of historical figure games (also known as wargames), board games (such as Diplomacy, Checkers, Draughts, Morabaraba, Sport Stacking, etc), card gaming, robotics, and eSports (whether they are played on 'cell phones, Sony® PSP's, personal computers or similar).

Major events

Big Walk

The Big Walk is staged on the first Sunday of October to encourage participation in physical activity. The annual Big Walk takes place in October. It is aligned with The Association for International Sport for All World Walking Day, which encourages and lobbies countries to walk by creating advocacy and awareness during October.

Annual National Recreation Day

Although not a public holiday, the day provides an opportunity to all South Africans to be actively involved by participating in recreation activities that will improve their health and wellbeing.

National Indigenous Games

The National Indigenous Games festival forms part of South Africa's annual heritage celebrations and brings people from culturally diverse backgrounds together. The popularity of the festival in recent years has contributed to an increase in the number of active participants in sport and recreation events.

The games played included khokho, intonga, ncuva, morabaraba, diketo, drie stokkies, kgati, dibeke and juskei, all of which are indigenous to South Africa.

Major sporting activities

Sporting codes

Major sporting codes in South Africa include: Athletics; Biking; Mountain Biking; Cycling; Boxing; Cricket; Canoeing; Rowing; Golf; Hockey; Ice Hockey; Motorsport; Flying; Netball; Rugby; Running (including South Africa's two world-renowned ultra-marathons – the Comrades Marathon in KwaZulu-Natal and the Two Oceans Marathon in the Western Cape); Soccer; Surfing; Sailing; Swimming; Tennis and Chess.

Services rendered by the DSAC

Some of the services rendered by the department include the:

- **National Archives**, which makes archival material available to the public. Although actual access to archival documentation is free of charge, the public is charged for the reproduction of material for further use, either on film or paper. Publications are also sold, and the public is charged for the transfer of data by magnetic means.
- **Video and Sound Archives** which collects, preserves and provides access to audio-visual records created both by government and private bodies or individuals.
- **Bureau for Heraldry**, which registers the heraldic representations, names, special names and uniforms of individuals, associations and institutions. It also renders advice on heraldic and related matters and provides financial assistance to institutions, boards, committees or other public bodies or persons in order to promote the functional objectives of the Bureau of Heraldry.
- **National Language Service**, which provides a translating and editing service to all government departments. It also provides policy development support relating to official language development, particularly related to the Use of Official Languages Act of 2012.

Promoting and preserving heritage infrastructure

The department's infrastructure development initiatives aim to achieve redress for South Africa's historical imbalances and contribute to social transformation by establishing and maintaining world-class heritage sites to boost tourism and create job opportunities, particularly in historically disadvantaged areas.

Community library services

In addition to building and upgrading libraries, the department, in collaboration with the Department of Basic Education (DBE), the DSAC also plans to build 70 dual library service points to support school curricula and enhance learning outcomes.

Cultural and creative industries

The Mzansi Golden Economy (MGE) seeks to create economic and job opportunities in the arts, culture and heritage sector by supporting programmes designed to develop audiences, stimulate demand, increase market access, and develop skills.

New names of towns

The names of towns that have been changed in the post-democratic dispensation include the following:

- **Limpopo:** Bela-Bela (Warmbaths); Lephalale (Ellisras); Modimolle (Nylstroom);

Mokopane (Potgietersrus); Musina (Messina); Polokwane (Pietersburg); Senwabarana (Bochum); Mogwadi (Dendron); Morebeng (Soekmekaar); Modjadjiskloof (Duiwelskloof) and Mookgophong (Naboomspruit).

- **Mpumalanga:** eMalahleni (Witbank); eManzana (Badplaas); KwaDukuza (Stanger); Mashishing (Lydenburg); Makhazeni (Belfast); Emgwenya (Waterval Boven); eNtokozweni (Machadodorp); Mbombela; (Nelspruit); eMkhondo (Piet Retief) and Thuli Fakude (Leandra).
- **Free State:** Mamafubedu (Petrus Steyn), Hlohlolwane (Clocolan) and Intabazwe (Harrismith).
- **Eastern Cape:** Gqeberha (Port Elizabeth); James Calata (Jamestown); Maletswai (Aliwal North); Cacadu (Lady Frere); Komani (Queenstown); Khowa (Elliot); KwaBhaca (Mount Frere); MaXesibeni (Mount Ayliff); Dikeni (Alice) and Makhanda (Grahamstown).
- **KwaZulu-Natal:** eMthonjaneni (Melmoth) and KwaDukuza (Stanger).
- **Gauteng:** Sophiatown (Triomf).
- **Western Cape:** Bo-Kaap (Schotchkloof).

New names of airports

- King Phalo Airport (East London Airport).
- Mthatha Airport (KD Matanzima Airport).
- Chief Dawid Stuurman International Airport (Port Elizabeth International Airport).

Some of the remarkable awards through which South Africa celebrates excellence in arts and culture are:

- South Africa Music Awards.
- South African Film and Television Awards.
- South African Fashion Industry Awards
- South African Literally Awards
- Van Toeka Af Living Legends Recognition Series.

Cultural Development

National Art Bank of South Africa (NABSA)

The NABSA is a national programme of the then DAC, as part of the MGE Strategy implementation. The vision of the NABSA is to promote, foster and stimulate a vibrant market for the collection of South African contemporary visual art.

It is tasked with purchasing artworks from South African artists, particularly that of emerging artists in order to lease and sell the artworks to South African Government departments, private companies and private individuals.

Young Patriots Programme

The Young Patriots Programme was launched in 2016 to encourage young people to participate actively in building the capacity of the arts, culture and

heritage sector, and gain meaningful skills through service delivery improvement and moral regeneration initiatives, and the youth social cohesion advocates programme.

National heritage

As part of efforts in recognising the work of South Africa's Living Human Treasures, the department has produced two books on women artists who have made a unique contribution to the living heritage. The first two books are about Noria Mabasa, a world-renowned (ceramic and wood) sculptor from Tshino Village in the Vuwani area in Limpopo and Esther Mahlangu, world-famous for her largescale paintings referencing her Ndebele heritage.

Languages

South Africa is a multilingual country. The Constitution of the Republic of South of 1996 guarantees equal status to 11 official languages to cater for its diverse people and their cultures. These are: English, isiNdebele, isiXhosa, isiZulu, Afrikaans, Sepedi, Sesotho, Setswana, Siswati, Tshivenda and Xitsonga.

Other languages used in South Africa include the Khoi, Nama and San languages, Sign Language, Arabic, German, Greek, Gujarati, Hebrew, Hindi, French, Portuguese, Sanskrit, Tamil, Shona, Telegu and Urdu. South Africa has various structures and institutions that support the preservation and development of languages.

Arts and culture organisations

Some of the organisations which are playing an active role in upholding the mandate of the DSAC include the following:

- The **National Heritage Council** engages heritage stakeholders in public and private institutions, including the various organs of civil society, mobilises debates and builds awareness about heritage.
- The **South African Heritage Resources Agency** is the national administrative management body for the protection of South Africa's cultural heritage.
- The **National Arts Council of South Africa** (NAC) facilitates opportunities for people to practice and appreciate the arts.
- The **National Film and Video Foundation** develops and promotes the film and video industry in South Africa.
- The **Pan South African Language Board** is a constitutional institution that promotes an awareness of multilingualism as a national resource and supports previously marginalised languages.
- The **South African Geographical Names Council** is an advisory body that facilitates name changes by consulting with communities to advise the Minister of Arts and Culture.
- Arts institutions include the State Theatre in Pretoria, Playhouse Company in Durban, Artscape in Cape Town, Market Theatre in Johannesburg, Performing

Arts Centre of the Free State in Bloemfontein and the Windybrow Theatre in Johannesburg.

- Heritage institutions include Die Afrikaanse Taalmuseum en monument, Paarl; Ditsong Museums of South Africa, Pretoria; Iziko Museums, Cape Town; KwaZulu-Natal Museum, Pietermaritzburg; National Museum, Bloemfontein; National English Literary Museum, Grahamstown; Robben Island Museum, Cape Town; Voortrekker Museum, Pietermaritzburg; War Museum of the Boer Republics, Bloemfontein; William Humphreys Art Gallery, Kimberley; Luthuli Museum, Stanger; Nelson Mandela Museum, Mthatha; Freedom Park and the Engelenburg House Art Collection.

Festivals

Some of the different arts and cultural festivals in South Africa include the following:

- The Aardklop National Arts Festival is held annually in October in Potchefstroom, North West. Although it is inherently Afrikaans, it is universal in character.
- Arts Alive International Festival in Newtown in Johannesburg provides the best in homegrown and overseas entertainment in September.
- The Cape Town International Jazz Festival features international and African artists. It also features photographic and art exhibitions.
- The Grahamstown National Arts Festival at the end of July is the biggest annual celebration of the arts on the African continent and consists of drama, dance, theatre, comedy, opera, music, jazz, visual art exhibitions, film, lectures, a craft fair and workshops, as well as a children's arts festival.
- The Kirkwood Wildlife Festival attracts visitors to see the game animal auction, agricultural exhibitions.
- The Dance Umbrella is a festival of contemporary choreography and dance, presenting work ranging from community-based dance troupes to international companies. The Dance Umbrella has established itself as the main "stepping stone" for many South African choreographers who now work internationally.
- The Klein Karoo Nasionale Kunstefees, a vibrant festival for the performing arts, is held annually in Oudtshoorn and presentations include drama, cabaret, and contemporary and classical music.
- The Moretele Park Tribute Concert is an annual festival which is held at Moretele Park in Mamelodi, Pretoria.
- The Cape Town Minstrel Festival sees the minstrels taking over the streets of Cape Town (Mother City) annually on 2 January for a parade that dates back to the mid-19th century. Minstrels in troupes parade throughout the city centre in their colourful garb.
- The Mangaung African Cultural Festival in Bloemfontein is one of the biggest cultural tourism events in southern Africa. This 10-day festival in October showcases the cream of African and international talent.
- The National Arts Festival, held annually in July in Grahamstown in the Eastern

Cape, is one of the largest and most diverse arts gatherings in Africa.

- The Splashy Fen Music Festival near Underberg in KwaZulu-Natal offers a variety of mainstream and alternative rock and pop music.
- Standard Bank Joy of Jazz is Johannesburg's biggest annual jazz festival, with local and international artists performing at different venues across the city.
- Up the Creek is a popular music festival held in February on the banks of the Breede River near Swellendam in the Western Cape.
- The White Mountain Folk Festival in the Central Drakensberg mountain range offers great music in an awesome setting for three days in September. It features acoustic performances by some of South Africa's top folk musicians.
- 503 Music Festival takes place twice a year in KwaMashu, KwaZulu-Natal. It is all about celebrating and thanking icons who were born and raised in the area, also bringing other national icons to the township.

Other festivals that attract both national and international visitors are: Innibos in Nelspruit, Mpumalanga; Taung Cultural Calabash in North West; the Awesome Africa Music Festival in Durban, KwaZulu-Natal; the Windybrow Theatre Festival in Johannesburg; Hilton Arts Festival in KwaZulu-Natal, and the One City Many Cultures in Cape Town, Western Cape.

Cultural tourism

Cultural festivals, African-cuisine projects, cultural villages, heritage routes and storytelling are areas that benefit from South Africa's booming tourism industry. Many cultural villages have been established throughout South Africa to reflect the different cultures and traditions of the country's people.

Initiated by the DSAC through the MGE Strategy of 2011, the South African Cultural Observatory (SACO) is a statistical and socio-economic research project, launched in 2014, which charts the socio-economic impact of the arts, culture and heritage sectors and the cultural and creative industries in South Africa.

The SACO supports the collection and analysis of data, influences policy, shares insights and builds on the intellectual capacity gained across the arts, culture and heritage sectors. It works across the breadth of all cultural domains, including the arts, heritage, tourism, museums, libraries, archives and creative industries.

Theatre

There are over 100 active venues across the country offering everything from indigenous drama, music, dance, cabaret and satire to classical opera and ballet.

Performing arts

Performing arts institutions are schedule 3A public entities established in terms of the Cultural Institutions Act of 1998. They are mandated to advance, promote and preserve the performing arts in South Africa; enhance the contribution of arts and culture to the economy; and create job opportunities and initiatives that further nation-building.

The following arts institutions receive annual transfers from the DSAC: Artscape (Cape Town); The Playhouse Company (Durban); The Market Theatre (Johannesburg); Performing Arts Centre of the Free State (Bloemfontein); and the South African State Theatre, (Pretoria).

Music

Music is one of the key cultural industries identified in the Cultural Industrial Growth Strategy Report and government has committed itself to harnessing its potential. In addition to its cultural value, music plays an important economic role in the country, generating significant copyright revenue. In this industry, the department has solid foundations on which to build.

These include the annual South African Music Week, the in-school education programme run in conjunction with the DBE, and the Moshito Music Conference and Exhibition. The Taking South African Music to the World Programme is aimed at improving export opportunities for South African music. Government funds a number of musical ensembles directly and indirectly, through the NAC. South Africa is the 25th largest market for recorded music, with the industry employing more than 20 000 people. Local music accounts for a third of all the music bought by South Africans.

Township jazz and blues, especially the kwêla music of the 40s and 50s, are being redefined; the country also has a rich choral tradition, and pop and rock musicians have made their mark internationally. Even techno-rave and house music have found their own variations in local culture. Kwaito and hip-hop are very popular, combining elements of rap, reggae and other musical styles into a distinctly South African style. Kwaai Jazz is also gaining momentum.

South African Music Awards (SAMAs)

The 28th edition of the annual SAMAs was held at the Sun City Superbowl near Rustenburg in North West on 28 August 2022. The winners were:

- **Album of the Year:** Musique – Chymamusique.
- **Best Duo or Group of the Year:** Ama Roto Vol.2 – Reece Madlisa and Zuma.
- **Best Female Artist of the Year:** Platinumb Heart Open – Msaki.
- **Best Male Artist of the Year:** Musique – Chymamusique.
- **White Star Newcomer of the Year:** Khanyisile Mthetwa – ‘African Bird’.
- **Best Hip Hop Album:** B4NOW – Blxckie.
- **Best Collaboration:** ‘Osama’ – Zakes Bantwini and Kasango
- **Best Amapiano Album:** Notumato – Young Stunna
- **TECNO Record of the Year:** Vula Mlomo – Musa Keys ft. Sir Trill and Nobantu Vilakazi.
- **TECNO Music Video of the Year:** Ghanama – Makhadzi ft. Prince Benza.
- **SAMPRA Artist of the Year:** Haksul MUZIQ.
- **TikTok Most Viral Song of the Year:** ‘uMlando’ – 9umba, TOSS & Mdoovar
- **SAMRO Highest Radio Airplay Composers Award:** Osama – Zakes Bantwini.

- **CAPASSO Most Streamed Song of the Year:** Abalele' – Kabza De Small, DJ Maphorisa ft. Ami Faku.
- **International Achiever Award:** Black Coffee.
- **Lifetime Achiever Award:** Joe Nina, Jimmy Dlodlu and McCoy Mrubata.
- **Best Adult Contemporary Album:** Platinumb Heart Open – Msaki.
- **Best Classical/Instrumental Album:** African Bird – Khanyisile Mthetwa.
- **Best African Adult Contemporary Album:** Cwaka – Mandisi Dyantiyis.
- **Beste Kontemporêre Musiek Album:** Volume – Die Heuwels Fantasties.
- **Best Traditional Album:** Tshihwilli Tshanga – Dr Mercy Masakona Madzivhandila.
- **Best Reggae Album:** Trailblazer – Reign Afrika.
- **Best Jazz Album:** History In A Frame – Jimmy Dlodlu.
- **Best Contemporary Faith Music Album:** Sacrificial Worship (Live) – Pulane Maphari.
- **Best Traditional Faith Music Album:** Vela Nkosi – Jumbo.
- **Best African Indigenous Faith Music Album:** Similapha Nkosi – NUZ Voices of Joy.
- **Best Maskandi Album:** Idaymani – Thokozani Langa.
- **Best Alternative Music Album:** Glow – Alice Phoebe Lou.
- **Best Rock Album:** Partypocalypse – Springbok Nude Girls.
- **Best R&B/Soul Album:** It's All You – Brian Temba.
- **Best Pop Album:** Trouble In Paradise – Shekhhinah.
- **Beste Pop Album:** Niks Vergelyk – Posduif.
- **Best Afropop Album:** Amagama – Nomfundo Moh.
- **Best Produced Music Video:** 'When House Was House' by Mabi Dixon feat. Mariechan and JNR SA – Mabi Ntuli and Shona.
- **Best Engineered Album of the Year:** It Takes Three by Charl Du Plessis Trio – Peter Auret.
- **Rest of Africa Award:** 'If Orange Was A Place' – Tems (Nigeria).
- **Remix of the Year:** Sun-EI Musician, Azana and Da Capo – Uhuru by Sun-EI Musician and Azana.
- **Best Kwaito Album:** Ama Roto Vol.2 – Reece Madlisa and Zuma.
- **Best Gqom Album:** Umshunqo Reloaded – Dladla Mshunqisi.
- **Best Dance Album:** Musique – Chymamusique.
- **Chairman's Award:** Yvonne Chaka Chaka.
- **Best Selling Artist:** Notumato by Young Stunner.

South African Traditional Music Achievement (SATMA) Awards

The 17th annual SATMA Awards event was held at the Mbombela Stadium in Mpumalanga on 1 October 2022 and the winners were:

- **Best Afro Soul Song:** 'We Dance Again' – Daniel Brothers.
- **Best African Jazz Artist & Group:** Mthobisi Mthalane.
- **Best Reggae Artist & Group:** Burning Fire.

- **Best Praise Singer Artist & Group:** Venda Boy.
- **Best Indigenous Poet Artist & Group:** Ntombi Ya Mutsonga.
- **Best Upcoming Artist & Group:** Ma'onas The Melodian.
- **Best Mbhaqanga Artist & Group:** Nombika Black Boyz.
- **Best Traditional Acapella Artist/Group:** Nombika Black Boyz.
- **Best Traditional Music Community Radio Presenter:** Lunga Mgamle – Zibonele FM.
- **Best Department of Arts & Culture:** North West.
- **Best Department Cultural Affairs Chief Director:** Limpopo.
- **Best Traditional Outfit:** Nomsa Mkhonza.
- **Best Traditional Social Media Influencer:** Zamamboe Mkhize.
- **Best Sepedi Artist Group:** Katalia.
- **Best Venda Artist Group:** Vha Venda Cultural Group.
- **Best Xitsonga Artist Group:** Nurse Matlala.
- **Best Ndebele Artist Group:** Allentjie.
- **Best Isixhosa Artist Group:** Sivuyile.
- **Best Setswana Artist Group:** Dikwena Tsa Matlosana.
- **Best Siswati Artist Group:** Msa Lomshiyo.
- **Best Indian Artist Group:** Pritisha M.
- **Best Sesotho Artist/Group:** Khopolo Khuluoe.
- **Best Boeremusiek Artist/Group:** Vatvas Dansorkes.
- **Best Maskandi (T&D) Artist/Group:** Udumakahle.
- **Most Voted Song Of The Year:** *Inhlupheko* – Gatsheni.
- **Best Traditional Music SABC Radio Presenter of the Year:** Tom Perez – Motsweding FM.

Orchestras

The NAC is responsible for funding the KwaZulu-Natal, Cape and Gauteng orchestras as well as the Cape Town Jazz Orchestra.

Dance

Dancing is part of the African way of life and has become a prime means of artistic expression, with dance companies expanding and exploring new territory. Contemporary work ranges from normal preconceptions of movement and performance art or performance theatre to the completely unconventional.

The DSAC's Breathing New Vision into Theatre and Dance in South Africa, a National Theatre and Dance Policy aims to nurture and celebrate theatre and dance, embracing and celebrating the diversity of theatre and dance forms in South Africa. The policy builds on a number of proposals that have been made by civil society and other organisations and institutions over the last decade.

Visual arts

South Africa has a rich variety of visual art, with influences ranging from prehistoric, ancient and indigenous art to western, Asian and contemporary art. Art galleries, ranging from small privately owned commercial galleries, to major regional galleries such as the South African National Gallery in Cape Town, the Durban Art Gallery in KwaZulu-Natal, the Johannesburg Art Gallery in Gauteng and King George VI Gallery in Gqeberha in the Eastern Cape, showcase collections of indigenous, historical and contemporary works.

Rock art

There are many traces of ancient cultures that existed in southern Africa in the distant past. Experts estimate that there are 250 000 rock-art sites south of the Zambezi. The San people left a priceless and unique collection of Stone Age paintings and engravings in the region, which also represents the largest collection of its kind in the world.

Photography

With its scenic beauty, abundant wildlife, diversity of cultures and rich historical heritage, South Africa is a photographer's paradise. Many South African photographers have been acclaimed for their work, which features in coffee-table books, documentaries, local and overseas exhibitions, magazines and newspapers.

Architecture

South Africa has a rich architectural heritage, reflecting contributions from all the cultural groups in the country. Through the centuries, a unique trend has developed in South Africa's architectural style, which has been referred to as an innovative marriage of traditions. This is evident in the variety of architectural structures found all over the country, ranging from humble dwellings, historical homesteads and public buildings, to modern, commercial buildings reflecting state-of-the-art technology and designs that match the best in the world.

Crafts

South African beadwork, once the insignia of tribal royalty alone, has found a huge range of applications, from the creation of coverings for everything from bottles to matchboxes. With workplaces ranging from the pavements and markets of the big cities to dwellings in deep rural areas, South Africans produce a remarkable range of arts and crafts, including various forms of traditional artwork and innovative new products.

These range from jewellery, tableware, home decorations, embroidery and key rings to skilfully crafted wooden engravings and wirework sculptures. In addition to the standard materials such as beads, grass, leather, fabric and clay, many other mediums are also used, including telephone wire, plastic bags, empty cans, bottle tops and even food tin labels, to create brightly coloured paper mâché

bowls. Shops, markets and collectors dealing in African crafts provide much-needed employment and income to communities.

Literature

South Africa has a rich and diverse literary history, and the local literature sector has become globally competitive and the country's writers continue to command respect throughout the world. South Africa commemorates the annual National Book Week (NBW) in September. It is an initiative of the South African Book Development Council, in collaboration with the DSAC.

The NBW is an important initiative in encouraging the nation to value reading as a fun and pleasurable activity and to showcase how reading can easily be incorporated into one's daily lifestyle. The commemoration coincides with International Literacy Day on 8 September. The 2022 theme was "Transforming Literacy Learning Spaces". The NBW was celebrated from 5 to 11 September 2022.

South African Literary Awards (SALA) 2022

The 17th SALA ceremony was held on the 31st International African Writers' Day, on 7 November 2022, at the Freedom Park Museum and Heritage Site in Pretoria. The winners were:

Children's Literature Award:

1. André Trantraal, Keegan & Samier – *Die Strokiesprent-Kompetisie*.
2. Nandipha Nomsobo – *Qashi Qashi, Injani?*
3. Niky Daly – *On My Papa's Shoulders*.

First Time Published Author Award:

1. Razina Theba – *A Home On Vorster Street*.
2. Herschelle Benjamin – *In Slavenhuis 39*.
3. Mmabore Gladys Mogashoa – *Bohwa bja rena*.

Youth Literature Award:

1. Theodora Lee – *Hashtag Happy*.
2. Daniëlla van Heerden – *As jy droom*.
3. Themba Qwabe – *Imizila Yegazi*.
4. Thatayaone Dire – *Se sa feleng se a tlhola*.
5. Maureen Ngwanamahlole Ramusi – *Matlampulele Meduping ya Lerato*.

Sello Duiker Memorial Literary Award:

1. Nick Mulgrew – *A Hibiscus Coast*.
2. Mzoli Mavimbela – *Amazwembezwebe KaGxuluwe*.

Poetry Award:

1. Ashwin Arendse – *Swatland*.
2. Bafana Charlse Peter – *Umkhumezelo umqulu 1, Umkhumezelo umqulu 2*.
3. Takalani Lishivha – *Khali Ya Lufuno*.
4. Thatayaone Dire – *Kgatsele ya puo*.

Nadine Gordimer Short Story Award:

1. Mzoli Mavimbela – *Zigqitywa Kuhlwile Zibonwe Liwuhlabile*.
2. SJ Naudé – *Mad Honey*.

Creative Non-Fiction Literary Award:

1. Ebrahim Harvey – *The Great Pretenders: Race and Class Under ANC Rule*.
2. Nicol Stassen – *Van Humpata tot Upingtonia*.

Literary Translators Award:

1. Tuelo Gabonewe – *Tshika Fa E Ya Baneng*.

Novel Award:

1. Damon Galgut – *The Promise*.
2. Ingrid Winterbach – *Voorouer. Pelgrim. Berg*.
3. Yamkela Ntwalana – *Intlungu Yevezandlebe*.
4. Patrick Khosa – *Nhlokonho wa vele*.

Posthumous Literary Award:

1. Gisela Ulliyatt – *Die waarheid oor duiwe*.

Chairperson's Literary Award:

1. Nokuthula Mazibuko Msimang.
2. Deela Khan.
3. Lebogang Mashile.

Lifetime Achievement Literary Award:

1. Deena Padayachee.
2. Vusi Benedict Mchunu.
3. Mothobi Mutloatse.

Film

The South African Government recognises the significant role played by the film sector in nation-building, promoting social cohesion, reconciliation and supporting economic growth and job creation. Government offers a package of incentives to promote its film production industry. The Foreign Film and Television Production incentive aims to attract foreign-based film productions to shoot on location in South Africa, and the South African Film and Television Production

and Co-production Incentive aims to assist local film producers in producing local content.

The South African Emerging Black Filmmakers incentive, a subprogramme of the South African Film and Television Production and Co-production Incentive, which aims to assist local emerging black filmmakers to nurture and grow them to take up big productions and thus contribute towards employment creation.

The three largest film distributors in South Africa are Ster-Kinekor, United International Pictures and Nu-Metro. Ster-Kinekor has a specialised art circuit, called Cinema Nouveau, with theatres in Johannesburg, Cape Town, Durban and Pretoria.

Film festivals include the Durban International Film Festival; the North West Film Festival; the Apollo Film Festival in Victoria West; the Three Continents Film Festival (specialising in African, South American and Asian films); the Soweto Film Festival; and the Encounters Documentary Festival, which alternates between Cape Town and Johannesburg.

Museums

South Africa has more than 300 museums ranging from museums of geology, history, the biological sciences and the arts, to mining, agriculture, forestry and many other disciplines. The Nelson Mandela Museum in Soweto, Johannesburg had signed a partnership with Google to launch the Google Expedition that would provide a virtual tour of the museum.

The Apartheid Museum opened in 2001 and is acknowledged as the pre-eminent museum in the world dealing with 20th century South Africa, at the heart of which is the apartheid story. The Apartheid Museum, the first of its kind, illustrates the rise and fall of apartheid.

An architectural consortium, comprising several leading architectural firms, conceptualised the design of the building on a seven-hectare stand. The museum is a superb example of design, space and landscape offering the international community a unique South African experience.

National Library of South Africa (NLSA)

The NLSA was established in terms of the NLSA Act of 1998, which requires it to contribute to socio-economic, cultural, educational, scientific and innovative development by collating, recording, preserving and making available the national documentary heritage, and to promote awareness and appreciation of the national documentary heritage.

It provides services to community libraries. These include, in partnership with provincial library services, ICT support; training in preservation and resource development; and marketing and exhibition services.

South African Library for the Blind (SALB)

The SALB was established in terms of the South African Library for the Blind Act of 1998, and is mandated to provide a national library and information service

to blind and print-handicapped readers in South Africa. The SALB receives an operational subsidy from the DSAC. It is committed to providing a quality service to meet, as fully as practically possible, the information needs of all South Africans who are blind or print handicapped.

Blind SA

Blind SA, based in Johannesburg, provides services for blind and partially sighted individuals to uplift and empower them by publishing books, magazines and other documents in Braille. It equips blind people with the skills they need to fully and independently participate in society.

This includes support in living without assistance, getting about, using technology, reading, working and socialising. Braille Services of Blind SA is the only producer of Braille in all 11 official languages of South Africa.



Official Guide to **SOUTH AFRICA** 2021/22

TOURISM



TOURISM

The mandate of the Department of Tourism (NDT), as outlined in the Tourism Act of 2014, is to promote the growth and development of the tourism sector; promote quality tourism products and services; provide for the effective marketing of South Africa as a domestic and international tourist destination; enhance cooperation and coordination between all spheres of government in developing and managing tourism; and promote responsible tourism for the benefit of South Africa, and for the enjoyment of all its residents and foreign visitors.

In recognition of tourism as a national priority with the potential to contribute significantly to economic development, the 1996 *White Paper on the Development and Promotion of Tourism in South Africa* provides for the promotion of domestic and international tourism. The National Tourism Sector Strategy provides a blueprint for the sector to meet the growth targets contained in the National Development Plan.

The department considers it vital to protect and reignite the demand for tourism to ensure that the sector lives up to its potential for contributing to South Africa's economic growth. Over the medium term, this will entail a focus on strengthening capabilities within the department to ensure the long-term sustainability of the sector; enhancing and maintaining core tourism assets and infrastructure, and in so doing creating work opportunities; supporting historically disadvantaged tourism enterprises; implementing norms and standards for safe operations across the tourism value chain; and enhancing tourism safety in collaboration with the South African Police Service.

Tourism contributes 3,7% to South Africa's gross domestic product, more than agriculture, utilities and construction. South Africa is optimistic about its tourism prospects, following the total rescinding of the Coronavirus Disease (COVID-19) restrictive regulations and lockdowns in June 2022.

Tourism Sector Recovery Plan (TSRP)

The tourism sector is one of the critical intervention areas that have been identified in the Economic Reconstruction and Recovery Plan as a key driver of the economic recovery in the country. The NDT together with the private sector and other stakeholders collaborated to develop the TSRP.

The plan is anchored on three interlinked pillars or strategic themes: protecting and rejuvenating supply, reigniting demand and strengthening enabling capability for long term sustainability.

The TSRP outlines a set of actions, timelines of implementation of each action and the allocation of each action to an implementation agent.

As part of the TSRP, the NDT has implemented projects to protect and rejuvenate the supply of tourists, and these include:

- publishing the Norms and Standards for Safe Operation in the Sector, as well as providing training within the sector on these;
- implementing the tourism infrastructure maintenance programme in key tourism

assets and finalizing the Baviaanskloof Interpretative Centre and Leopard Trail, which was funded by the European Union at the tune of R57 million;

- refurbishing existing state-owned tourism assets such as precincts, protected areas, national and provincial parks, botanical and zoological gardens and heritage sites through the Tourism Infrastructure Maintenance Programme;
- implementing initiatives to mobilise resources through investment promotion; and
- rolling out the comprehensive sector skills development programme to ensure that relevant skills are available as the sector recovers.

Destination Development Programme

During the medium term, the Destination Development Programme will continue with the implementation of a tourism infrastructure maintenance programme of state-owned assets to protect and rejuvenate tourism supply.

The focus of this work is on improving and upgrading sites of heritage significance including liberation heritage, national parks, botanical gardens as well as rural and township precincts.

Tourism Incentive Programme (TIP)

The NDT continues to implement the TIP to stimulate the growth, development and transformation of the South African tourism sector. The TIP aims to stimulate growth and development in the tourism sector by providing financial assistance to privately owned tourism enterprises.

In line with its mission to employ strategic partnerships, it has collaborated with other government departments and entities in the roll out of the incentive programme. These include the National Empowerment Fund, Industrial Development Corporation, Tourism Grading Council of South Africa (TGCSA) and the Small Enterprise Finance Agency.

Under the TIP, the department will implement the Market Access Support Programme (MASP) offering partial financial support to qualifying small tourism enterprises to participate and exhibit at selected tourism marketing platforms. Various trade shows have returned following the lockdown conditions globally, which resulted in the cancellation of most international tourism trade platforms.

Tourism Equity Fund (TEF)

In support of the objectives of enterprise development and transformation, the department will aim to fast-track the piloting of the TEF, which offers for capital investment in the form of grant funding to commercially viable black-owned tourism enterprises.

The TEF is intended to fast-track transformation within the tourism sector. The facility provides a combination of debt finance and grant to facilitate equity acquisition and new project development in the tourism sector by black

entrepreneurs. The fund will also seek to develop skills and ensure that the sector is sufficiently equipped to meet increased demand and expectations by implementing capacity-building programmes such as the wine service training programme, the hospitality youth programme, and food and beverage programmes.

Tourism Grading Support Programme (TGSP)

The TGSP is a joint initiative between NDT and the TGCSA under the broader TIP to encourage more accommodation and MESE (meetings, exhibitions, and special events) establishments to get graded and stay graded under the star grading system.

The programme aims to improve quality and standards of tourism offerings and gives discounts of up to 90% on grading assessment fees for new and renewal grading applications. This is an important incentive as it supports our quality assurance programme that enhances overall visitor experience without putting additional burden on small enterprises.

The department is expected to implement the Women in Tourism (WiT) Programme as a platform to drive initiatives that support the development and empowerment of women in the tourism sector. This platform recognises the challenges faced by women entrepreneurs who are often found at the bottom end of the tourism economic value chain.

Green Tourism Incentive Programme (GTIP)

The GTIP is a resource efficiency incentive programme of the NDT whose objective is to encourage private sector tourism enterprises to move towards the sustainable management of water and energy resources whilst adhering to responsible tourism practices. Through grant funding, the GTIP assists private sector tourism enterprises in reducing the cost of investing in more energy and water efficient operations, while increasing their competitiveness, profitability and operational sustainability in the long term. The GTIP broadly offers the following to qualifying tourism enterprises:

- 90% of the cost for a new resource efficiency audit or the full cost for reviewing an existing resource efficiency audit conducted by the National Cleaner Production Centre of South Africa; and
- Grant funding to qualifying small and micro enterprises on a sliding scale from 30% to 90% of the total cost of implementing qualifying resource efficiency interventions, which is capped at R1 million.

The Industrial Development Corporation manages the programme on behalf of the department.

South African Tourism (SAT)

The Tourism Act of 2014 mandates SAT to market South Africa internationally and domestically as a preferred tourism and business events destination, ensure

that tourist facilities and services are of the highest standard, and monitor and evaluate the performance of the tourism sector.

Over the medium term, the entity planned to focus on responding to the National Tourism Recovery Strategy. Primary activities will include revitalising South Africa's reputation as a premier travel destination; and protecting, defending and entrenching current markets while growing new strategically identified markets to drive domestic business travel and meet the rising demand for domestic leisure travel. The South Africa National Convention Bureau (SANCB) is a 'one-stop solution' for independent information and assistance, giving neutral advice on all aspects of hosting and organising any business event in South Africa.

TOURISM IN THE PROVINCES

Western Cape

The Western Cape, which lies bordered by two oceans – the Indian Ocean to the south and the Atlantic Ocean to the west – is South Africa's most developed tourism region.

Key attractions

- Table Mountain, which forms part of the Table Mountain National Park, is one of the official New Seven Wonders of Nature, following a lengthy international public voting process. A modern cableway takes visitors to the top of the mountain, providing spectacular views.
- The Victoria and Alfred (V&A) Waterfront, the Company's Gardens, the District Six Museum, the houses of Parliament and the South African National Gallery.
- The Nelson Mandela Gateway to Robben Island is in the Clock Tower Precinct at the V&A Waterfront. It houses interactive multimedia exhibitions, an auditorium, boardrooms, the Robben Island Museum and a restaurant.
- The South African Rugby Museum in Newlands reflects the history of the sport as far back as 1891.
- All South African wine routes fall under the auspices of the Wine of Origin Scheme. Production is divided into official regions, districts and wards. There are five principle demarcations – Coastal, Breede River Valley, Little Karoo, Olifants River and Boberg, covering 21 districts and 61 wards.
- Jazz is popular in Cape Town, ranging from traditional blues to African jazz. The top jazz event in the Western Cape is the annual Cape Town International Jazz Festival, affectionately referred to as "Africa's Grandest Gathering".

Garden Route

The Garden Route features the pont at Malgas, which is one of the two remaining points in the country, ferrying vehicles and livestock across the Breede River. This popular route spans roughly 200 km of South Africa's southern coast, incorporating a picturesque stretch of coastline.

Key attractions

- Attequas Kloof Pass, South African/Anglo-Boer War blockhouses and the Bartolomeu Dias complex. Great Brak River offers a historic village with many opportunities for whale- and dolphin-watching along the extensive coast. The Slave Tree in George, located just outside the Old Library, was planted in 1811. It is known to be the biggest English oak in the Southern Hemisphere.
- Bungee-jumping at the Gouritz River Gorge, hiking, mountain-biking and angling are popular pastimes.
- The Point in Mossel Bay is popular among surfers and its natural pool formed by rock is also a favourite swimming spot at low tide.
- Genadendal is the oldest Moravian village in Africa, with church buildings and a school dating back to 1738. The Genadendal Mission and Museum complex documents the first mission station in South Africa.
- Villiersdorp houses the Dagbreek Museum that dates back to 1845. The historical home, Oude Radyn, is possibly the only building in the Western Cape to have Batavian wooden gutters and down pipes.

The Karoo

The Karoo is distinctively divided into the Great Karoo and the Little Karoo by the Swartberg Mountain Range, which runs east-west, parallel to the southern coastline, but is separated from the sea by another east-west range called the Outeniqua–Langeberg Mountains. The Great Karoo lies to the north of the Swartberg range; the Little Karoo is to the south of it.

Little Karoo

The Little Karoo's fascinating landscape is fashioned almost entirely by water. Its vegetation ranges from lush greenery in the fertile river valleys to short, rugged Karoo plants in the veld. Gorges feature rivers that cut through towering mountains, while breathtakingly steep passes cross imposing terrain. The region is also home to the world's largest bird – the ostrich.

Key attractions

- Excellent wines and port are produced in the Calitzdorp and De Rust areas.
- The Swartberg Nature Reserve and Pass with their gravel roads are also worth a visit.
- The Little Karoo Nasionale Kunstefees (National Arts Festival) is held in Oudtshoorn annually.
- The Cango Caves, a series of 30 subterranean limestone caves, bear evidence of early San habitation and features magnificent dripstone formations.
- Amalienstein and Zoar are historic mission stations midway between Ladysmith and Calitzdorp. Visitors can go on donkey-cart and hiking trails through orchards and vineyards. The Seweweekspoort is ideal for mountain biking, hiking, and protea and fynbos admirers.

Northern Cape

The Northern Cape is an excellent sandboarding destination and a number of local operators offer sandboarding lessons and tours. The dunes near Kakamas and Witsand are very popular and expert boarders and novices are more than welcome – boards can be rented on arrival.

Adventure-tour companies specialising in dune boarding in South Africa advise you to bring: a camera to record the inevitable antics, lots of sunscreen and a sense of humour. Some of the more enterprising companies turn it into a fun day, complete with children's dune boarding and picnics. This is a fun sport that will satisfy most people's need for speed.

Key attractions

- The Big Hole in Kimberley is the largest hand-dug excavation in the world. In 1871, diamonds were discovered at the site and mined manually by prospectors.
- The house where Sol Plaatje (African National Congress founding member and human rights activist) lived in Kimberley, has a library of Plaatje's and other black South African writers' works, and several displays, including a portrayal of black involvement in the South African/Anglo- Boer War.
- Known as the "Oasis of the Kalahari", Kuruman is blessed with a permanent and abundant source of water that flows from Gasegonyana (Setswana for "the little water calabash") – commonly called the "Eye of Kuruman" – which yields 20 million litres of water a day. The Wonderwerk Cave at Kuruman features extensive San paintings that may be viewed by appointment.
- The Kalahari Raptor Centre cares for injured birds. Many of these majestic creatures can be seen at close quarters.
- Upington is the commercial, educational and social centre of the Green Kalahari, owing its prosperity to agriculture and its irrigated lands along the Orange River. A camel-and-rider statue in front of the town's police station pays tribute to the "mounties", who patrolled the harsh desert territory on camels.
- Namaqualand is famous for a spectacular annual show in spring when an abundance of wild flowers covers vast tracts of desert.
- Namaqualand is also home to the Ais-Ais/Richtersveld National Park. It is managed jointly by the local Nama people and South African National Parks.
- De Aar is the most important railway junction in South Africa. The author Olive Schreiner lived in the town for many years. Visitors can dine in her former house, which has been converted into a restaurant.
- Hanover is known for its handmade shoes and articles made mostly from sheepskin and leather.
- Mattanu Private Game Reserve offers the ultimate Kalahari game experience – there are roan, sable, buffalo, golden oryx, golden gnu and many other types of antelope and wild animals. One can view the animals on a quad bike, safari vehicle or even by helicopter.

Free State

This central region of South Africa is characterised by endless rolling fields of wheat, sunflowers and maize, and forms the principal bread basket of South Africa.

Key attractions

- With its King's Park Rose Garden containing more than 4 000 rose bushes, the Free State's major city, Bloemfontein, has rightfully earned the nickname "City of Roses." The city also hosts an annual rose festival.
- Bloemfontein has a busy cultural and social-events calendar. One of the annual events is the Mangaung African Cultural Festival, popularly known as the Macufe Arts Festival, in September.
- The National Women's Memorial commemorates the women and children who died in concentration camps during the Anglo-Boer/South African War.
- The Gariep Dam, more than 100-km long and 15-km wide, is part of the Orange River Water Scheme, the largest inland expanse of water in South Africa. The Gariep Dam Nature Reserve lies between the dam and Bethulie.
- Clocolan is known for the beauty of its cherry trees when they are in full bloom in spring. San rock paintings and engravings are also found in the area.
- The Llandaff Oratory in the nearby village of Van Reenen is believed to be the smallest Roman Catholic church in the world.
- At Harrismith, there are various memorials in honour of those who fought in the Anglo-Boer/South African War and World War I. Of particular interest is a memorial for the Scots Guards and Grenadier Guards.
- The Golden Gate Highlands National Park outside Clarens has beautiful sandstone rock formations.
- The Vredefort Dome, a World Heritage Site, is the oldest and largest meteorite impact site in the world. It was formed about two billion years ago when a giant meteorite hit Earth.

Eastern Cape

The Eastern Cape boasts a magnificent coastline that is complemented by more than 60 state-owned game reserves and over 30 private game farms, which collectively cover an area greater than the Kruger National Park.

Key attractions

- Gqeberha (formerly Port Elizabeth) has some beautiful parks with well-landscaped gardens, including St George's Park, which covers 73 ha.
- To the north-west of Graaff-Reinet lies the Valley of Desolation, which is a national monument within the Karoo Nature Reserve that was formed millions of years ago by weathering erosion.
- Varied game reserves, including the Addo Elephant, Mountain Zebra and Mkambati parks.

- South Africa's first marine park, the Tsitsikamma National Park extends along a rocky coastline of 50 km, and 3 km out to sea.
- Southern right and humpback whales and their calves are regularly spotted from the high dunes, usually between May and November, while common and bottlenose dolphins are often seen close to shore.
- The Camdeboo National Park, near Graaff-Reinet, was proclaimed as South Africa's 22nd National Park.

Limpopo

The Limpopo landscape is made up of dramatic contrasts characterised by hot savanna plains and mist-clad mountains, age-old indigenous forests and cycads alongside modern plantations, and ancient mountain fortresses and the luxury of contemporary infrastructure and modern-day facilities.

Key attractions

- The Marakele National Park is home to some rare yellowwood and cedar trees and the world's largest colony of Cape vultures. It is also a leader in the conservation of the black rhino.
- Polokwane is considered the premier game-hunting destination in South Africa.
- The Mapungubwe Archaeological Site, about 80 km west of Musina, lies within the boundaries of the Mapungubwe National Park. It is one of the richest of its kind in Africa and a world heritage site. Excavations in the 1930s uncovered a royal graveyard, which included a number of golden artefacts, including the famous gold foil rhinoceros.
- The Kruger National Park (northern section) is one of South Africa's major tourist attractions. The park is home to a large number and wide variety of amphibians, reptiles and birds, as well as 147 mammal species, including the Big Five (African lion, African elephant, Cape buffalo, African leopard and black rhinoceros).

North West

North West has several cultural villages that entertain and attract visitors. A number of excellent game reserves have been established, including the Pilanesberg National Park.

Key attractions

- The historic route of Mahikeng includes an South African/Anglo-Boer War siege site, the Molema House where Sol Plaatje lived while writing his Mafikeng Diary, and the Mahikeng Museum.
- The Groot Marico region is known as mampoer country and visitors can explore the Mampoer Route. The Kortkloof Cultural Village is dedicated to the Tswana people.
- Ottosdal is the only place in South Africa where the unique "wonderstone" or

pyrophyllite, is found and mined.

- San rock engravings, Stone Age implements and structures are found on farms such as Witpoort, Gestoptefontein, Driekuil and Korannafontein.

Mpumalanga

Mpumalanga means “the place where the sun rises” in the Nguni languages. The climate and topography vary from cool highland grasslands at 1 600 m above sea level, through the middleveld and escarpment, to the subtropical Lowveld towards the Kruger National Park and many private game reserves. Scenic beauty, climate and wildlife, voted the most attractive features of South Africa, are found in abundance in this province.

Key attractions

- Barberton features many reminders of the early gold-rush era. Museums include Belhaven, Fernlea House and Stopforth House. The only known verdite deposits in the world are found in the rocks of the Barberton district. The annual Diggers Festival is held in September every year.
- The spectacular Blyde River Canyon is a 26-km-long gorge carved out of the face of the escarpment, and is one of the natural wonders of Africa. God’s Window provides a magnificent panoramic view across miles of densely forested mountains, the green Lowveld and the canyon.
- Sabie is the centre of the largest man-made forest in South Africa and a popular destination among mountain bikers. The Cultural Historical Forestry Museum depicts various aspects of the country’s forestry industry.
- The Bridal Veil, Horseshoe and Lone Creek waterfalls, and Mac Mac pools and falls just outside Sabie are well worth a visit. At the Montrose Falls in Schoemanskloof, the Crocodile River cascades into a series of rock pools.
- The region also holds rich historical sentiments centred on the monument of the late Mozambican President Samora Machel, constructed in the village of Mbuzini.

Gauteng

‘Gauteng’ is a Sesotho word meaning “place of gold”. It is the smallest province of South Africa and also the most populous and urbanized. It is characterised by a cosmopolitan mix of people from all walks of life.

Key attractions

- Natural areas include the Suikerbosrand Nature Reserve (Heidelberg); Braamfontein Spruit Trust, The Wilds on Houghton and the Klipriviersberg Nature Reserve in Johannesburg; the Kloofendal Nature Reserve and Walter Sisulu Botanical Gardens (in Roodepoort); and the National Botanical Garden, Smuts House Museum, and Freedom Park in Pretoria; as well as the Tswaing Crater.

- The Sterkfontein caves near Krugersdorp are the site of the discovery of the skull of the famous Mrs Ples, an estimated 2,5-million-year-old hominid fossil; and Little Foot, an almost complete hominid skeleton of more than 3,3 million years old.
- The Constitution Hill Precinct is set to become one of South Africa's most popular landmarks.
- A guided tour of Soweto leaves a lasting impression of this vast community's life and struggle against apartheid.
- The Apartheid Museum in Johannesburg tells the story of the legacy of apartheid through photographs, film and artefacts.
- The Nelson Mandela Centre of Memory opened its doors to the public following the death of former President Nelson Mandela in December 2013.
- The Union Buildings celebrated its centenary in 2013. Designed by Sir Herbert Baker, construction started in 1910 and was completed in 1913. It has since been the setting for presidential inaugurations. It is also the setting of many national celebrations, including Women's Day and Freedom Day. In December 2013, a bronze statue of former President Mandela was unveiled at the Union Buildings.
- The National Zoological Gardens in Pretoria is considered one of the 10 best in the world.
- The old mining town of Cullinan is where the world's biggest diamond, the 3 106-carat Cullinan diamond, was found.

KwaZulu-Natal

One of the country's most popular tourist destinations, the province stretches from Port Edward in the south to the borders of Eswatini and Mozambique to the north.

Key attractions

- The Durban area has a significant number of reserves, developed parks and specialised gardens, the most renowned being the Municipal Botanical Garden.
- Annual events in and around the city include the popular Comrades Marathon between Durban and Pietermaritzburg, an international surfing competition, the Duzi canoe marathon, the Midmar Mile, Dolphin Mile open water swimming events and the Durban July Handicap horse race.
- The Weza State Forest in East Griqualand runs through indigenous forests and commercial plantations. The forest is home to several antelope species and a huge variety of birds.
- St Lucia and its surroundings comprise the iSimangaliso Wetland Park that have five separate ecosystems. It is a fishing and bird watching paradise. Boat trips on the lake offer opportunities for crocodile and hippo sightings. The Kosi Bay Nature Reserve is part of the Coastal Forest Reserve between Mozambique and Sodwana Bay.

- The Hluhluwe-Umfolozi Park, one of the largest game parks in South Africa, is home to the Big Five, as well as cheetah and wild dogs.
- The Battlefields Route in northern KwaZulu-Natal has the highest concentration of battlefields and related military sites in South Africa.
- The Midlands Meander is a scenic drive between Hilton and Mooi River, with some art studios, potters and painters, to herb gardens and cheese makers.
- Midmar Dam is zoned for yachting and power-boating while the 1 000-ha Midmar Game Park has rhino, zebra, a wide variety of antelope species and waterfowl.

Top-10 reasons to visit South Africa

1. **Affordable** – In South Africa, you can even afford luxury and have spending money for shopping and other treats.
2. **Natural beauty** – South Africa’s scenic wonders are legendary. From Table Mountain to God’s Window, the mountains, forests, coasts and deserts will sooth your soul and delight you.
3. **World-class facilities** – You will find it easy to get around, find a comfortable place to stay and have a great meal.
4. **Adventure** – South Africa is the adventure capital of the world. With over 130 adventures, there is something for everyone from mountain walks to shark-cage diving.
5. **Good weather** – In sunny South Africa with a great weather, you can enjoy the outdoors, play golf year-round and take advantage of the nearly 3 000 km coastline.
6. **Rainbow Nation** – The Rainbow Nation celebrates all its African and immigrant cultures. South Africans are known for their friendliness and hospitality.
7. **Diverse experiences** – Go almost anywhere in South Africa and experience the ultimate combination of nature, wildlife, culture, adventure, heritage and good vibe.
8. **Wildlife** – The abundant and diverse wildlife include the Big Five (African lion, African elephant, Cape buffalo, African leopard and black rhinoceros).
9. **Freedom Struggle** – Discover a nation’s struggle for freedom whilst following the footsteps of Nelson Mandela, Hector Pieterse and many other celebrated revolutionaries.
10. **Responsible tourism** – In South Africa you can travel with care as you explore protected areas, contribute to social and conservation projects, and collect arts and crafts.

Traveller’s Guide:

Any person travelling in or out of the Republic of South Africa should unreservedly declare:

- All goods (including goods of another person) upon his person or in his possession which were purchased or otherwise acquired abroad or on any

ship, vehicle or in any shop selling goods on which duty has not been paid; were remodelled, processed or repaired abroad, on arrival.

- Goods that are prohibited, restricted or controlled under any law;
- Goods that were required to be declared before leaving the Republic.

Before leaving, all goods which a traveller is taking with them beyond the borders of the Republic, including goods which are:

- Carried on behalf of another person;
- Intended for remodel, process or repair abroad;
- Prohibited, restricted or controlled under any law;
- Goods that a person, who temporarily entered the Republic, was required to declare upon entering the Republic.

Travellers must, upon request by a Customs Officer, provide the officer with full particulars related to the goods such as invoices, transport documents, proof of payment to supplier, letter of authority and any permits applicable to such goods. Further, travellers must answer fully and truthfully all questions put to him by such officer and, if required by such officer to do so, produce and open such goods for inspection by the said officer, and shall pay the duty and taxes assessed by such officer, if any.

What are your Duty Free allowances?

The duty free allowance only apply to goods for personal use or to dispose of as gifts in accompanied travellers' baggage declared by returning residents and non-residents visiting the Republic.

The following imported goods declared by travellers in their accompanied baggage may be exempted from paying any import duties and Value-Added Tax (VAT):

- New or used goods of a total value not exceeding R5 000 per person;
- Wine not exceeding 2 litres per person;
- Spirituous and other alcoholic beverages, a total quantity not exceeding 1 litre per person;
- Cigarettes not exceeding 200 and cigars not exceeding 20 per person;
- 250 g cigarette or pipe tobacco per person;
- Perfumery not exceeding 50 ml and eau de toilette not exceeding 250 ml per person.

Wine, spirituous and other alcoholic beverages, tobacco products and perfumery imported in excess of the quantities specified must be cleared at the rates of duty specified in Schedule No.1 ("Tariff") to the Customs and Excise Act No.91 of 1964.

The aforementioned goods are commonly referred to as consumables or luxury goods and the rate of duty can be considerably high if travellers exceed the

above quantities and must clear those excess quantities and pay the import duties at the rates of duty specified in the tariff.

Even if goods are bought at an inbound duty free shop, the duty free allowance still applies upon arrival.

Note: The duty free allowance applicable to new or used goods to the value of R5000 per person, is applicable in addition to the duty free allowance applicable to consumable goods.

What is your flat-rate assessment allowance?

- If you have goods in excess of the R5 000 duty free allowance but not exceeding R20 000, you may elect to pay customs duty at a rate of full duty less 20% (flat-rate) with VAT exempted instead of clearing the goods at the rates of duty specified in Schedule No. 1 (“tariff”) to the Customs and Excise Act of 1964;
- Goods in excess of the R20 000 flat-rate assessment threshold, pay import duties and VAT in accordance with the Harmonised System description and originating status of goods.

Conditions for duty free allowances:

- The duty free allowances related to new or used goods is only allowed once per person during a period of 30 days, following an absence of not less than 48 hours from South Africa;
- The flat rate assessment allowance is only allowed during a period of 30 days and shall not apply to goods imported by persons returning after an absence of less than 48 hours;
- The duty free allowances related to wine, spirituous and other alcoholic beverages, tobacco products and perfumery is only allowed once per person during a period of 30 days, following an absence of not less than 48 hours from South Africa;
- The goods must be carried as accompanied baggage;
- The tobacco or alcoholic beverage allowance is not applicable to persons under the age of 18 years.

What about handmade articles?

- Travellers can import handmade articles of leather, wood, plastic, stone or glass of up to 25kg for commercial purposes without paying duties or taxes.

What about goods coming in temporarily?

- You may be required to lodge a cash deposit as security to cover potential import duty or VAT on certain articles imported temporarily. Your refund will be paid after confirmation that the goods have left the country.

To access the Customs external Policy Traveller Processing SC-PA-01-11 visit the Customs page on the SARS website www.sars.gov.za.

Prohibited and restricted goods

- SARS administers certain prohibitions and restrictions on behalf of a number of government departments, institutions and bodies
- Prohibited means the goods are not allowed to enter or exit South Africa
- Restricted means goods are allowed to enter or exit South Africa under certain conditions e.g. permit or certificate is required.

To access a list of “Prohibited and restricted goods SC-CC-32”, visit the Customs page on the SARS website www.sars.gov.za.

Note: Traders and Travellers must be aware of the Counterfeit Goods Act No. 37 of 1997, which states that goods of inferior quality made or sold under another brand, without the brand owners authorisation, is an infringement upon which civil and/or criminal proceedings may be taken against the offender.

Cash restrictions

- A traveller is allowed to declare and carry a maximum of R25 000 / unlimited foreign currency, whether leaving or entering;
- A traveller shall declare whether or not he has with him any banknotes, gold, securities or foreign currency; and produce any bank notes, gold, securities or foreign currency which he has with him;
- The South African bank notes is unlimited if the traveller is going to / coming from a country within the Common Monetary Area (CMA);
- Travellers are advised to contact the South African Reserve Bank to obtain approval prior to taking cash across the borders of South Africa
- Although there’s technically no legal limit on how much money you can carry on a plane, if you are traveling internationally you must declare amounts of more than US\$10,000 on your customs form, and be prepared for possible interviews with customs or law enforcement to explain the amount of money you have with you.

Southern African Customs Union (SACU)

The countries that fall under the SACU are Lesotho, Namibia, South Africa, Botswana and Eswatini. Travellers from SACU member countries do not pay customs import duties and are entitled to a VAT exemption on goods up to a value of R5 000.

When do I register for a customs code?

- Before goods can be imported or exported, SARS may require a person or entity to formally license or register prior to conducting any activity regulated by the Act
- A person, including a traveller, who imports or exports goods of which the total value required to be declared is less than R150 000 during any calendar year is excluded from formal registration requirements.

Persons excluded from formal registration requirements may make use of the registration code 70707070 subject to the following conditions:

- He/she is a natural person;
- Enters the goods for home consumption, temporary export or export;
- Reflects in the field provided on the bill of entry or declaration form his or her:
 - South African Revenue Service taxpayer reference number; or
 - South African identity document number, in the case of a South African citizen or a permanent resident of the Republic, or passport document number in the case of a person who is not a South African citizen nor a permanent resident.

To register for a customs code

- You must complete the DA 185: Application form: Registration /Licensing of Customs and Excise clients, together with the relevant supporting annexure to the DA 185; or
- Use the Electronic Registration System and complete the online version DA185 and the relevant online supporting Annexure.
- Please refer to the following External Policies on www.sars.gov.za:
 - Customs Registration, Licensing and Designation SC-CF-19.
 - Excise Licensing and Registration SE-LR-02.

Refund of tax on visitor's purchases

Value Added Tax (VAT) at a rate of 15% is levied on the purchase of most goods in South Africa. Tourists and foreign visitors to South Africa may make application at departure points for a refund of the VAT paid. The tax invoices/proof of payment for the purchases and the goods must be presented for inspection at the port of exit.

What happens if I have not complied with customs requirements?

SARS endeavours to educate and inform traders of their tax/duty obligations through various interventions, to help you to keep your tax affairs in order. Traders who are found to be non-compliant will be subjected to the Penal Provisions of the Customs and Excise Act of 1964, which includes a fine or criminal prosecution.



Official Guide to **SOUTH AFRICA** 2021/22

TRANSPORT



TRANSPORT

The Constitution of the Republic of South Africa of 1996 identifies the legislative responsibilities of different spheres of government with regards to all modes of transport and associated infrastructure.

The Department of Transport (DoT) is responsible for the legislation and policies for rail, pipelines, roads, airports, harbours, and the intermodal operations of public transport and freight. As such, it conducts sector research, formulates legislation and policy to set the strategic directions of subsectors, assigns responsibilities to public entities, regulates through setting norms and standards, and monitors implementation.

Over the medium term, the department planned to focus on intensifying its efforts to improve mobility and access to social and economic activities by cultivating an enabling environment for the maintenance of national and provincial road networks, the improvement and integration of road-based public transport services, and the modernisation of passenger rail infrastructure.

According to the Statistics South Africa's General Household Survey of 2021, 33,6% of South African households had at least one household member who used a minibus taxi/sedan taxi/bakkie taxi during the week preceding the survey. The use of minibus taxi was most common in Gauteng (41,3%) and KwaZulu-Natal (38,3%). By comparison, 3,7% of South African households used a bus during the preceding week. It is notable that 10,5% of households in Mpumalanga used the bus. Only 0,2% of households used trains.

To improve efficiencies at Driver's Licence Testing Centre (DLTC) level, the DoT was expected to implement a new service-delivery model that would not only improve the experience of the motorist but would drastically cut down turnaround times.

This includes the time an applicant spends at a DLTC to the time it takes to receive a driving licence. The department has already implemented the online payment system, which eliminated the time spent by an applicant in a queue.

The deployment of smart enrolment infrastructure in the 2022/23 financial year will further improve the processing time as the units are linked to Home Affairs real time to validate the identity of the applicant.

By mid-2022, the Road Traffic Management Corporation (RTMC) was finalising the agreement with the Health Professions Council of South Africa that would enable motorists to do an eye test at an optometrist of their choice and the results directly uploaded in the system.

Maintaining South Africa's roads

The Road Transport programme facilitates activities related to the maintenance of the country's national and provincial road network. The national road maintenance backlog has grown over the years, partly due to the shifting of funds from non-toll roads to more economically viable toll roads. Factors such as the condition of roads, weather patterns and traffic volume determine grant allocations for the

maintenance of provincial roads. Over the medium-term period, provinces were expected to rehabilitate, reseal, regravell and blacktop-patch roads.

Facilitating integrated road-based public transport networks

The public transport network grant funds the infrastructure and indirect costs of bus rapid transit services in Johannesburg, Tshwane, Cape Town, George, Nelson Mandela Bay and Ekurhuleni. In these cities and regions, funding from the grant is expected to lead to a combined increase in the number of weekday passenger trips on bus rapid transit services from 216 214 in 2021/22 to 331 275 in 2024/25.

Addressing passenger rail challenges

Inefficient investments in, and the deferred maintenance and insufficient safeguarding of South Africa's rail infrastructure has resulted in the rapid deterioration of the passenger rail network and its services. As part of recognising that their recovery is key to providing affordable, safe and reliable public transport services.

Allocated funds will be used to focus on repairs and maintenance as part of the Passenger Rail Agency of South Africa's (PRASA) rolling stock fleet renewal programme, and improved security.

In recovering commuter rail services, the DoT had to adjust the timelines for the resumption of services in a number of these corridors due to either protracted procurement processes for infrastructure such as substations and other factors beyond its control.

The Mabopane – Pretoria – Johannesburg – Naledi line is a core network of PRASA in Gauteng and a major priority for PRASA's recovery, as well as the Cape Town – Langa – Khayelitsha – Kapteinsklip corridor in the Western Cape.

PRASA's Corridor Recovery Plan has identified 10 priority corridors for resumption of services, with the last coming on stream by December 2022. By mid-2022, services had already resumed on five of these corridors.

The Mabopane line has already resumed services, which is being undertaken in two phases. Phase one implementation is in full swing, with five stations operational in Pretoria, Hercules, Mountain View, Pretoria North and Mabopane.

Phase 2 will see additional 15 train stations renovated and brought back into service. More train trips will also be introduced with shorter headways. The return to service of the Central Line was also undertaken in two phases.

Phase 1 entailed restoring services on the Cape Town to Bellville (via Sarepta); Langa to Pinelands and Langa to Nyanga segments.

The manufacturing plant at Dunnottar in Ekurhuleni has produced 95 new train sets and delivered to PRASA. A total of 68 of these train sets have been deployed on the network.

On 23 March 2022, Cabinet approved the *White Paper on National Rail Policy* that takes a holistic view on the development of the rail system. This policy introduces radical structural reforms in the sector and also intends to place rail on a sound footing to play a meaningful role as a backbone of a seamlessly integrated transport value chain.

One of the highlights of the policy relates to enabling investments in the rail network with specific attention to the exploitation of rail's genetic technologies to achieve renaissance in the following market spaces: heavy haul, heavy intermodal, which includes double-stacked containers, contemporary urban and regional rapid transit, as well as higher-speeds of 160 to 200km/h and high speeds up to 300 km/h.

In June 2021, President Cyril Ramaphosa announced the decision to corporatise the Transnet National Ports Authority (TNPA) as an independent subsidiary of Transnet.

Following this pronouncement, an interim board was appointed, and relevant processes given effect to enable the establishment of the TNPA as an independent subsidiary. The finalisation of this process with the appointment of a permanent Board will give full effect to the provisions of the National Ports Act of 2005.

Entities:

The 12 public entities under the Ministry of Transport are the Airports Company South Africa (ACSA); PRASA; SANRAL; Ports Regulator of South Africa; Air Traffic and Navigation Services (ATNS); Cross-Border Road Transport Agency (CBRTA); Railway Safety Regulator; Road Accident Fund (RAF); Road Traffic Infringement Agency (RTIA); RTMC; South African Civil Aviation Authority (SACAA) and South African Maritime Safety Authority (SAMSA).

Airports Company South Africa

ACSA was established in terms of the Airports Company Act of 1993. The company owns and operates nine principal South African airports, including OR Tambo International Airport in Johannesburg, Cape Town International Airport and King Shaka International Airport in Durban. Over the medium term, the company will continue to focus on airport infrastructure and asset management, airport safety and security, and airport management.

Passenger Rail Agency of South Africa

PRASA was established in terms of the Legal Succession to the South African Transport Services Amendment Act of 2008, with the primary mandate of providing rail commuter services within, to and from South Africa in the public interest. The agency also provides long-haul passenger rail and bus services within, to and from South Africa.

South African National Roads Agency Limited

The SANRAL was established in terms of the SANRAL and National Roads Act of 1998. The agency is responsible for the planning, design, construction, operation, management, control, maintenance and rehabilitation of the South African national road network, including the financing of these functions. This includes toll and non-toll roads.

Ports Regulator of South Africa

The Ports Regulator was established in terms of section 29 of the National Ports Act of 2005. The regulator sets tariff increases for the National Ports Authority and regulates the provision of adequate, affordable and efficient port services at South Africa's commercial ports.

It also provides dispute resolution, including hearing complaints and appeals under the tribunal programme, which is aimed at ensuring fairness, transparency and competitive practices in the ports sector to ensure equity of access to port facilities and services.

Air Traffic and Navigation Services

The ATNS Company was established in terms of the ATNS Act of 1993. The company is mandated to provide safe, orderly and efficient air traffic navigational and associated services to the air traffic management community, and in accordance with the standards set out by the International Civil Aviation Organisation.

Cross Border Road Transport Agency

The CBRTA was established in terms of the CBRTA Act of 1998. It is mandated to advise the Minister of Transport on cross-border road transport policy, regulate access to the market by the freight and passenger industry in respect of cross-border road transport by issuing permits, undertake road transport law enforcement, and play a facilitative role in contributing to the economic prosperity of the region.

Railway Safety Regulator

The Railway Safety Regulator was established in terms of the National Railway Safety Regulator Act of 2002 to set up a national regulatory framework and monitor and enforce legislative compliance in the rail sector. Its primary mandate is to oversee railway operators in South Africa and enforce their safe operation, as well as rail operators from neighbouring states whose operations enter South Africa. In terms of the act, all railway operators are responsible and accountable for ensuring the safety of their operations.

Road Accident Fund

The RAF Act of 1996 provides for the establishment of the RAF, which is mandated to compensate South African road users for losses or damages caused by motor vehicle accidents within the borders of South Africa. Due to the impact of the COVID-19 pandemic and associated lockdown on road traffic volumes, less fuel was sold and fuel levy collection decreased. The fund receives its revenue from the RAF levy in terms of the Customs and Excise Act of 1964.

Road Traffic Infringement Agency

The RTIA was established in terms of the Administrative Adjudication of Road Traffic Offences (AARTO) Act of 1998 to facilitate the adjudication of infringement notices dispensed by various issuing authorities to alleged infringers on South African roads.

The AARTO Act envisages the agency as an independent adjudicator to provide for an administratively fair and just system for road traffic law infringements while also upholding the rights of the alleged infringer.

A high court order in 2021/22 on the constitutionality of the legislation and this entity is yet to be confirmed by the Constitutional Court. Until this happens, the entity must continue to perform its statutory obligations.

Road Traffic Management Corporation

The RTMC is a public entity established in terms of the RTMC Act of 1999 to provide national road traffic strategic planning and law enforcement, and pool public sector resources for the provision of road traffic management.

South African Civil Aviation Authority

The SACAA was established in terms of the SACAA Act of 1998 and is governed by the Civil Aviation Act of 2009. The authority is mandated to oversee the safety and security of the civil aviation industry and ensure compliance with and adherence to the standards and recommended practices of the International Civil Aviation Organisation. Its focus over the medium term will remain on ensuring it fulfils its mandate.

South African Maritime Safety Authority

The SAMSA was established in terms of the SAMSA Act of 1998, and is mandated to advance South Africa's maritime interests, which include ensuring the safety of life and property at sea and preventing and combating the pollution of the marine environment.

National Transport Master Plan (NAPMAP)

The NATMAP 2050 is aimed at delivering a dynamic, long-term and sustainable transportation system framework which is demand responsive and that provides

a coordinated transport agenda for the whole country. The NATMAP recognises that efficient, affordable and reliable transport systems are critical components of national economic development.

National Airspace Master Plan (NAMP) 2020-2025

The NAMP 2020-2025 provides the strategic view and direction of airspace organisation and management within South Africa. The objectives of the NAMP are to:

- service the airspace in accordance with ICAO Standards and Recommended Practices (SARPS) in such a way that it meets the requirements of all users and particularly, the international community.
- rationalise all managed airspace in accordance with ICAO SARPS in such a way that it meets the requirements of all users by a consultative process, strategically and tactically.
- minimise all permanent prohibited, restricted and danger areas in accordance with ICAO SARPS and to facilitate the flexible use of airspace to the benefit of all users.
- continually maintain information (uncontrolled) airspace in accordance with ICAO SARPS in such a way that it meets the requirements of all users.

Rural Transport Strategy

Rural transport development ensures better mobility and access in rural areas. The national transport survey found that a higher percentage of the population cannot afford the high cost of transport. This limits their access to transport and therefore social and economic opportunities. This perpetuates underdevelopment and isolation from mainstream public transport system.

The National Land Transport Act of 2009 provides for different levels of government to be responsible for planning. The Rural Transport Strategy is expected to contribute to the formulation of the National Planning Guidelines for rural district municipalities' public transport network plans.

Aviation

Civil aviation serves as a major catalyst for global economic activities and is vital to trade and tourism. South Africa's major airports include:

- OR Tambo International in Gauteng
- Cape Town International in the Western Cape
- King Shaka International in KwaZulu-Natal
- Bram Fischer International in the Free State
- Chief Dawid Stuurman International in the Eastern Cape
- Upington International in the Northern Cape
- King Phalo Airport in the Eastern Cape
- George Airport in the Western Cape

- Kimberley Airport in the Northern Cape
- Polokwane International Airport in Limpopo
- Kruger Mpumalanga International Airport in Mpumalanga.

Public transport

Scholar Transport

The National Scholar Transport Policy provides a framework for safe and secure transport for learners through the cooperation of stakeholders and law-enforcement authorities. The DoT developed the national operational guidelines to remedy operational challenges that provinces have in implementing the Scholar Transport Programme.

The DoT continues to make a difference in the lives of many learners in rural and farmland areas through the Shova Kalula initiative, which supplies learners with non-motorised mobility in the form of bicycles.

Taxi and bus industries

The taxi industry remains the most important part of South Africa's public transport system. Taxis are the preferred type of road transport. With more than 200 000 taxis on the road, the taxi industry generates about R40 billion per year and has created approximately 300 000 direct and indirect job opportunities, including drivers, taxi marshals and administrative support.

Integrated public transport networks (IPTNs)

The implementation of the IPTNs in the country is central to the functioning of hubs of economic activity as they provide sustainable, affordable and functional transport solutions to urban commuters. By mid-2022, seven cities were already operational:

- MyCiTi in Cape Town, Western Cape.
- Rea Vaya in Johannesburg, Gauteng.
- A Re Yeng (Let's go) in Pretoria, Gauteng.
- Go George in George, Western Cape.
- Harambee in Ekurhuleni, Gauteng.
- Libhongoletu in Nelson Mandela Bay, Eastern Cape.
- Leeto la Polokwane in Polokwane, Limpopo.

Gautrain

The Gautrain is an 80-km long mass rapid transit railway system that links Johannesburg, Pretoria and OR Tambo International Airport. It was built to relieve traffic congestion in the Johannesburg-Pretoria traffic corridor and offer commuters a viable alternative to road transport, as Johannesburg had limited public transport infrastructure. The Gautrain offers two distinct train services: An Airport Service linking Sandton and Marlboro to the OR Tambo International

Airport and a Commuter Service linking Rhodesfield, Marlboro, and Sandton (east-west link) and Park, Rosebank, Sandton, Midrand, Centurion, Pretoria Central and Hatfield (north-south link). All stations with the exception of the Airport Station have integrated car parking facilities.

Maritime

South Africa is a maritime country defined by the characteristics of its oceans, heritage, international trade patterns and geography and boasts of a significant marine real estate. Although situated far from major trade partners and markets, the country occupies a geostrategic location on a major sea-trading route that lies at the heart of the South-South Trade and connects the Asia markets with those of the Americas.

South Africa derives its maritime interests from its trade and geo-economic structure, its geo-political aspirations and the obligations arising from being a regional power located at the southern tip of Africa. It has a developing maritime transport sector potentially able to contribute substantially to the economy of the country and support the National Development Plan.

The aim of the Comprehensive Maritime Transport Policy is to create a policy environment that facilitates the growth and development of South Africa's maritime transport sector to reach its full potential in support of economic development; growth and sustainable social development of our country and the ultimate benefit of all South Africans.

Arrive Alive campaign

The objectives of the Arrive Alive Road-Safety Campaign, especially during the Easter and December holidays, are to reduce the number of road-traffic accidents in general and fatalities in particular, and improve road-user compliance with traffic laws. The goals of the campaign are to:

- reduce the number of road-traffic accidents in general, and fatalities in particular, by 5% compared with the same period the previous year.
- improve road-user compliance with traffic laws.
- forge improved working relationships between traffic authorities in the various spheres of government.



Official Guide to **SOUTH AFRICA** 2021/22

WATER AND SANITATION



WATER AND SANITATION

The mandate of the Department of Water and Sanitation (DWS), as set out in the National Water Act of 1998 and the Water Services Act of 1997, is to ensure that the country's water resources are protected, managed, used, developed, conserved and controlled by regulating and supporting the delivery of effective water supply and sanitation.

This is done in accordance with the requirements of water-related policies and legislation that are critical in delivering on people's right to have enough food and water, growing the economy, and eradicating poverty.

Over the medium term, the department planned to continue focusing on enhancing regulatory measures, ensuring that infrastructure is protected and restored, and ensuring that water and sanitation services are managed effectively.

Over the period ahead, the department will continue to ensure the delivery of safe water and the effective management of wastewater through enforcing various regulatory measures and strengthening its oversight functions. To this end, the Blue Drop, Green Drop and No Drop regulatory standards are in place to improve asset management practices in municipalities.

Over the medium-term period, the department is expected to support 32 district municipalities with developing water and sanitation reliability plans and monitoring the compliance of all water services authorities with regulatory standards. Over the same period, the department aims to ensure that 80% of applications to authorise water-use are finalised within 90 days and that 963 wastewater systems are assessed for compliance against Green Drop regulatory requirements.

In February 2022, the DWS convened a two-day National Water and Sanitation Summit, attended by a wide range of stakeholders and experts. As a result of these engagements, it has developed a thorough understanding of the water and sanitation challenges facing the country, as well as a high level of consensus regarding what needs to be done to turn the tide.

Through Operation Vulindlela, the DWS is working towards resolving 80% of water-use licences submitted by mining companies within 90 days down from years.

National Water and Sanitation Master Plan (NW&SMP)

By mid-2022, the DWS was leading the initiative to develop the NW&SMP, which is intended to guide the water sector with investment planning for the development of water resources and the delivery of water and sanitation services over the horizon until 2030, and beyond. This development is a first for South Africa.

The core purpose of the NW&SMP is to provide an overall perspective of the scope of the water and sanitation business to provide a comprehensive schedule of actions needed to address present challenges, to estimate the investments

required to ensure effective water resources, and water and sanitation services delivery, as well as to facilitate effective integrated investment planning, implementation of actions and evaluation of achievements.

The master plan identifies key actions in the water sector and allocates roles and responsibilities to all in the water sector, from the various tiers of government, the private sector and other stakeholders for the implementation of the plan.

The NW&SMP will include a list of key programmes, projects and actions to be implemented for the protection and development of the national water resources, and for the provision of adequate and reliable water and sanitation services for all citizens. It will also address the enabling requirements, such as the institutional and legal arrangements for implementation, operation and maintenance, funding requirements and models, and monitoring and evaluation models.

National Water Resources Infrastructure Agency (NWRIA)

By mid-2022, the DWS was in the process of planning and implementing a range of major projects to augment national bulk water resource infrastructure. It was also in the process of establishing the NWRIA to leverage large-scale investments in national water resource infrastructure that are required to ensure that South Africa has sufficient bulk water supply now and in future.

The augmentation projects, establishment of the NWRIA and interventions are intended to ensure that the supply of water does not become a binding constraint to economic growth. They are also aimed at ensuring that challenges with municipal water and sanitation service delivery are not exacerbated by a shortage of bulk water, as has happened in the cities of Cape Town and Nelson Mandela Bay, amongst others.

Water and sanitation sector regulation, compliance and enforcement

The department committed itself in June 2021 to reviving the incentive-based regulation programmes, namely the Green Drop and Blue Drop Certification programmes. A total of 995 wastewater systems were subjected to Green Drop consultative audits; not only to detect non-compliance and dysfunctionality, but also to guide those responsible towards improving operational philosophies which will result in improved effluent quality.

These plants demand the merging of scientific and engineering skills to ensure that we have the capability to treat used water to acceptable water quality standards, which allows the reuse of the precious resource.

Drinking water

Tap water inside their dwellings, off-site or on-site was most common among households in Western Cape (99,4%), Gauteng (98,4%), and Free State (93,6%)

and least common in Limpopo (69,4%) and Eastern Cape (71,0%), according to Statistics South Africa's General Household Survey of 2021.

Since 2002, the percentage of households in Eastern Cape with access to water in the dwelling, on- or off-site increased by 14,9 percentage points and those in KwaZulu-Natal by 11,6 percentage points. Nationally, the percentage of households with access to tap water in their dwellings, off-site or on-site increased by 4,3 percentage points during the same period.

Despite these notable improvements, access to water actually declined in six provinces between 2002 and 2021. The largest declined was observed in Limpopo (-4,4 percentage points), Mpumalanga (-4,3 percentage points), North West (-2,2 percentage points) and Free State (-2,0 percentage points). In addition, access to water has been declining in both Eastern Cape and Limpopo since at least 2014. On the positive side one should, however, take into account that many more households were provided with water in 2021 than two decades earlier.

An estimated 45,2% of households had access to piped water in their dwellings in 2021. A further 29,4% accessed water on-site while 12,2% relied on communal taps and 1,9% relied on neighbours' taps. Although generally households' access to water improved, 2,7% of households still had to fetch water from rivers, streams, stagnant water pools, dams, wells and springs in 2021.

The percentage of households with access to piped or tap water in their dwellings, off-site or on-site by metropolitan area, is presented in Figure 9.2. The figure shows that 98,6% of households in metros had access to tap water. This type of access to water was most common in Cape Town (99,5%), Nelson Mandela Bay (99,2%), and Johannesburg (99,1%). Mangaung (92,0%) and Ethekwini (97,7%) recorded the lowest access amongst metros.

Groundwater

World Water Day in 2022 was celebrated under the theme: "Making the invisible visible", highlighting the importance of exploring 'groundwater' as an alternative water source. Groundwater is already the main source of water for large parts of our country, including the Karoo, Northern Cape and Western Cape, and parts of Limpopo, KwaZulu-Natal and the Eastern Cape.

While the development of groundwater sources is a local function, the DWS plays an important monitoring and regulatory role, and was expected to finalise and publish improved regulations and guidelines for the extraction of groundwater and management of groundwater use in 2022.

Lesotho Highlands Water Project (LHWP)

The R36-billion Phase 2 LHWP is aimed at ensuring an adequate long term water supply for Gauteng and the Vaal River System. The project is funded through finance raised by the Trans-Caledon Tunnel Authority and is being implemented jointly by the governments of Lesotho and South Africa, through the Lesotho Highlands Water Commission and the Lesotho Highlands Development Authority.

By mid-2022, about 14% of the budget had been spent and the project is due to start delivering water to Gauteng in November 2027.

Provincial projects

The DWS has a number of projects at various stages throughout the country. In the Eastern Cape, the Mzimvubu Water Project is aimed at providing water to 750 000 people at a cost of R25 billion. By mid-2022, the designs were 80% complete and the first round of fundraising began in January 2022 through a Request for Information.

In the Free State, the department was in the feasibility stage of a R10-billion project to build a major pipeline from the Xhariep Dam to augment water supply in Mangaung. The project is planned to be completed by 2028. In addition, the department is implementing a R1.7 billion project to upgrade wastewater treatment works, water treatment works and water distribution networks in the Maluti-a-Phofung area. This project is planned to be completed by July 2025.

In KwaZulu-Natal, the raising of the dam wall at Hazelmere Dam to ensure long-term water supply to Ethekwini was expected to be completed in the third quarter of 2022 at a cost of approximately R800 million. The construction of the uMkhomazi Water Project, which is also aimed at delivering long term additional water to the Ethekwini region at a cost of R23 billion, is expected to start in 2025 and be completed by 2028.

In May 2022, the DWS officially launched the R24-billion Olifants River Water Resources Development Project, which will be implemented as a Public-Private Collaboration with mining companies, to fast-track water delivery to communities and mines in the Sekhukhune and Mokgalakwena municipalities in Limpopo by 2028. Government and the mining companies will each fund about 50% of the project, which will be implemented by the transformed Lebalelo Water Users Association.

The project is at approval stage with some of the work packages at pre-construction stage and construction is anticipated to begin by late 2022. The R1.2 billion Thembisile-Loskop bulk water supply project in Mpumalanga is aimed at addressing water supply challenges in the Thembisile Hani Local Municipality. The project will provide 23 Mℓ of water to communities in the Mpumalanga and Limpopo provinces. The project is planned to be implemented over a three-year period from May 2022 to April 2025.

Phase 1 of the Vaal Gamagara Water Supply Scheme, which is critical for both mining and potable water supply in the Northern Cape, cost R1,4 billion and Phase 2 was expected to start in 2022 at an estimated cost of R10 billion.

In 2022 the DWS commissioned the Moretele South Pipeline in the North West, a 60-km pipe which will be operated and maintained by Magalies Water and which will benefit the villages in the Moretele Local Municipality, including Carousel View, Dertig, Bosplaas, Mathibestad, and Makapanstad.

To increase water security in the west coast area of Cederberg in the Western Cape, the DWS had by mid-2022 resumed construction work to raise the wall of Clanwilliam Dam at a cost of R3,2 billion. The project is due to be completed in late 2026.

In addition, the department was implementing the R21-million Brandvlei Dam Project in the Western Cape, which involves the construction of a feeder canal which will provide an additional 33 Mℓ of water for storage in the dam, unlocking agricultural growth potential in the area. Construction was expected to be completed by October 2022.

Entities:

Consolidated water boards

Water boards are established in terms of the Water Services Act of 1997. The water boards' main role is to provide bulk potable and wastewater to water service institutions within their respective service areas. They support municipalities by providing, managing and operating regional bulk water services infrastructure.

The water boards vary in size, activities, customer mix, revenue base and capacity. Some water boards provide retail water and sanitation services on behalf of municipalities. Rand Water and Umgeni Water serve largely urban areas. The rest of the water boards operate largely in the rural areas.

Rand Water

Rand Water was established in terms of the Water Services Act of 1997 and is mandated to supply quality bulk potable water within its area of supply. The water board's distribution network includes more than 3 056 kilometres of large diameter pipelines, feeding 58 strategically located service reservoirs, with customers including metropolitan municipalities, local municipalities, and mines and industries in and around Gauteng, supplying, on average, 3.7 million litres of water daily.

Umgeni Water

Umgeni Water was established in terms of the Water Services Act of 1997 to provide water and sanitation services in its service area, which comprises mostly rural areas in KwaZulu-Natal and the eThekweni metropolitan area. The water board supplies water to approximately six million consumers. Its ongoing objective is to support.

Magalies Water

Magalies Water provides quality bulk water and secondary services directly to municipalities, mines and other industries which in turn helps to grow the economy and improve the lives of communities. Raw water is drawn from the rivers which flow into dams that are owned by the DWS and Magalies Water buys the water from the department.

Water from the dams is channelled to Magalies Water's four water-treatment plants where the water is treated and made safe for public consumption. Municipalities draw the water provided by Magalies Water through the reservoir and provide it to consumers for household use.

Bloem Water

Bloem Water (formerly Bloem Area Water Board) was established in 1991 with the aim to operate the Caledon/Bloemfontein Government Water Scheme as well as supplying water to the municipal areas of Bloemfontein, Bainsvlei, Bloemspruit, Botshabelo and Dewetsdorp.

Amatola Water

Amatola Water was established in 1998 to provide bulk-water services in the Eastern Cape. It is committed to ensuring that the Eastern Cape communities have access to basic water services as this is a right enshrined in the Constitution of the Republic of South Africa of 1996.

Mhlathuze Water (MW)

MW was established in 1980 and predominantly operates in the uMkhanyakude, King Cetshwayo and Zululand district municipalities but has plans to expand beyond these districts. MW is supplied by three dominant water sources namely: Mhlathuze River, Lake Mzingazi and Lake Nsezi. The organisation's business activities include raw (untreated), clarified (partially treated) and purified water supply; disposal of industrial and domestic waste water and scientific services.

Lepelle Northern Water (LNW)

The mandate of LNW is to provide bulk-water services to water services authorities and industries within Limpopo. It is actively involved in schemes serving more than three million people as well as some major industrial users. LNW will continue to partner with the DWS in implementing Water Conservation and Demand Management as well as groundwater exploration to augment the surface water.

Overberg Water

Overberg Water came into being in 1993 when the former Duivenhoks and Rùensveld water boards amalgamated. It distributes water to the surrounding and rural areas of Cape Agulhas, Theewaterskloof and Swellendam. It has three water-treatment schemes with 22 reservoirs which are strategically located across the Overberg region.

The water board derives its revenue from the sale of bulk potable water to its main customers, namely municipalities, as well as retail sales to the agricultural sector/industry in the region. The organisation supplies and distributes approximately

four million cubic metres of water per year. The region currently supplied covers approximately 6 000 square kilometres with a pipeline network estimated at 1 450 kilometres.

Sedibeng Water

By mid-2022, the DWS was in the process of disestablishing the Sedibeng Water Board, which was financially unsustainable, and also had governance challenges. It was established on 1 June 1979. It initially serviced the Free State Goldfields and parts of the former Western Transvaal. In 1996, Sedibeng Water extended its operational area to North West and also the Vaal Gamagara Water Scheme in the Northern Cape.

Other entities:

- The **Breede-Gouritz Catchment Management Agency** was established in terms of the National Water Act of 1998. The agency plays an important role in protecting, using, developing, conserving, managing and controlling water resources in a cooperative manner within the boundaries of the Breede-Gouritz catchment area.
- The **Inkomati-Usuthu Catchment Management Agency** was established in 2004 in terms of the National Water Act of 1998. The agency plays a key role in the use, protection and development of water resources in the Inkomati-Usuthu water management area, and aims to ensure that water is used and managed to support equitable and sustainable socio-economic transformation and development.
- The **Water Research Commission** was established in terms of the Water Research Act of 1971. It is mandated to conduct research in the water sector by determining needs and priorities for research; promoting coordination, cooperation and communication in the area of water-research development; stimulating and funding water research; promoting the effective transfer of information and technology; and enhancing knowledge and building capacity in the water sector.
- The **Water Trading Entity** was established in 1983 and was converted into a trading entity in terms of the Public Finance Management Act of 1999 in 2008. The entity's primary role is to manage water infrastructure and resources, and the sale of raw water.
- The **Trans-Caledon Tunnel Authority** was established in 1986 as a specialised liability management entity, deriving its mandate from the National Water Act of 1998. It is responsible for financing and implementing the development of bulk raw water infrastructure and providing treasury management services to

the DWS. The authority plays an important role in providing: financial advisory services such as structuring and raising project finance, managing debt and setting tariffs; project implementation services; and other technical support to the department and water boards.